CITROËN C3 AIRCROSS

HANDBOOK

INSPIRED BY YOU

SCAN MY CITROËN

MY CITROËN

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Access to the Handbook

MOBILE APPLICATIONS

Install the **Scan MyCitroën** application (content available offline).

Also available in the **MyCitroën App** application.

ONLINE

View or download the handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

– the language,

– the vehicle and body style,

– the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën C3 Aircross.
This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

! For any work on your vehicle, contact a member of the Manufacturer's dealer network, hereinafter referred to as a 'dealer', or a qualified workshop.

Key

! Safety warning

i Additional information

Environmental protection feature


Left-hand drive vehicle


Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area

Overview ■

Eco-driving ■

1 Instruments

Instrument panels 8
Warning and indicator lamps 9
Indicators 14
Distance recorders 17
Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen 17
Monochrome screen C 18
Touch screen 19
Trip computer 20
Setting the date and time 23

2 Access

Remote control / Key 24
Keyless Entry and Start 25
Back-up procedures 27
Doors 29
Boot 30
Central locking 30
Alarm 31
Panoramic sunroof 32
Electric windows 34

3 Ease of use and comfort

Front seats 36
Rear seats 38
Steering wheel adjustment 41
Mirrors 41
Ventilation 42
Heating/Manual air conditioning 44
Automatic air conditioning 44
Front demist - defrost 46
Heated windscreen 46
Rear screen demist - defrost 47
Front fittings 47
Rear fittings 50
Boot fittings 51
Courtesy lamps 53
Interior ambient lighting 54

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 55
Direction indicators 56
Automatic illumination of headlamps 57
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 57
Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations 58
Automatic headlamp dipping 58
Headlamp beam height adjustment 59
Cornering lighting 59
Wiper control stalk 60
Changing a wiper blade 62
Automatic wipers 62

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 64
Hazard warning lamps 64
Horn 65
Emergency or assistance 65
Electronic stability control (ESC) 67
Grip control 68
Hill Assist Descent Control 69
Seat belts 70
Airbags 73
Child seats 75
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 77
ISOFIX child seats 78
i-Size child seats 80
Installing child seats 80
Child lock 83

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 84
Starting / Switching off the engine with the key 86
Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Start 87
Parking brake 89
5-speed manual gearbox 89
6-speed manual gearbox 90
Automatic gearbox (EAT6) 90
Gear shift indicator 92
Hill start assist 93
Stop & Start 93
Tyre under-inflation detection 95
Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 97
Head-up display 98
Memorising speeds 99
Road signs recognition 100
Speed limiter 102
Cruise control - Specific recommendations 104
Cruise control 104
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 106
Distraction detection 109
Lane departure warning system 110
Blind spot monitoring 111

Parking sensors 112
Top Rear Vision 113
Park Assist 116

Practical information 7
Compatibility of fuels 121
Refuelling 121
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 122
Snow chains 123
Towing device with quickly detachable towball 123
Towing device 126
Energy economy mode 127
Roof bars 127
Bonnet 128
Engine compartment 129
Checking levels 130
Checks 132
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 133
Advice on care and maintenance 135

In the event of a breakdown 8
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 137
Tool kit 137
Temporary puncture repair kit 138
Spare wheel 141
Changing a bulb 144
Fuses 147
12 V battery 147
Towing 150

Technical data 9
Engine technical data and towed loads 153
Petrol engines 154
Diesel engines 156
Dimensions 157
Identification markings 157

Bluetooth® audio system 10
First steps 159
Steering mounted controls 160
Menus 160
Radio 161
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 162
Media 163
Telephone 165
Frequently asked questions 168

CITROËN Connect Radio 11
First steps 171
Steering mounted controls 172
Menus 173
Applications 174
Radio 174
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 176
Media 176
Telephone 178
Settings 181
Frequently asked questions 182

CITROËN Connect Nav 12
First steps 184
Steering mounted controls 185
Menus 185
Voice commands 187
Navigation 190
Connected navigation 193
Applications 195
Radio 198
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 199
Media 199
Telephone 201
Settings 203
Frequently asked questions 205

Event data recorders 13

Alphabetical index ■

Access to additional videos





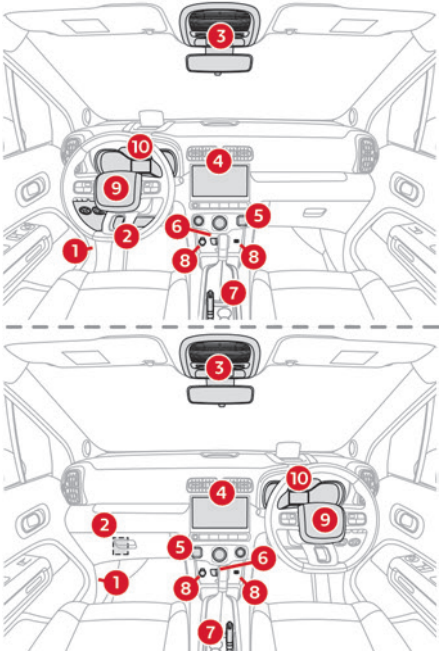




bit.ly/helpPSA

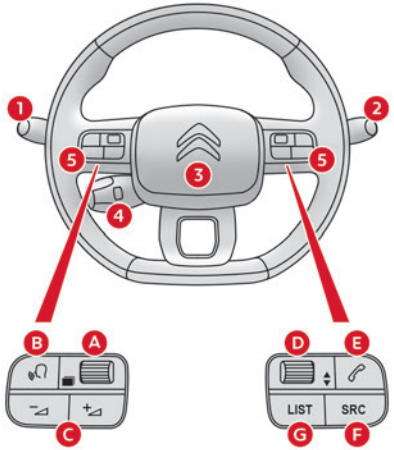
Instruments and controls

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of some elements vary depending on the version or trim level.



1. Bonnet release
2. Dashboard fuses
3. Courtesy lamp
   Warning lamps display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
   Panoramic opening sunroof controls
   Interior rear view mirror
   Emergency and assistance call buttons
4. Monochrome screen with audio system
   Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav
   Automatic air conditioning (depending on version)
5. START/STOP/Grip control/Hill Assist
   Descent Control controls
   Ventilation (depending on version)
   Heating (depending on version)
   Manual air conditioning (depending on version)
   Front demisting/defrosting
   Rear screen demisting/defrosting
6. Gearbox controls
7. Parking brake
8. USB socket
   12 V socket
9. Horn
10. Instrument panel

Steering-mounted controls

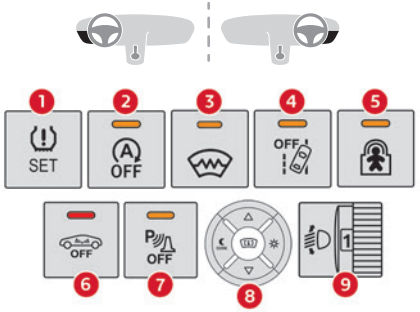


1. Exterior lighting/Direction indicators control stalk
2. Wipers/Screenwash/Trip computer control stalk
3. Horn
4. Cruise control/speed limiter controls
5. Audio system controls

A. Select the instrument panel display mode
B. Voice commands
C. Decrease/Increase volume
D. Select previous/next media
Confirm a selection
E. Access the **Telephone** menu
Manage calls

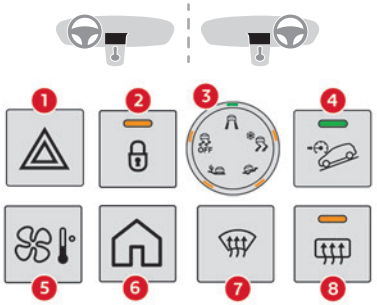
F. Select an audio source
G. Display the list of radio stations/audio tracks

Side control bar



1. Tyre under-inflation detection
2. Stop & Start
3. Heated windscreen
4. Lane departure warning system
5. Electric child lock
6. Alarm
7. Parking sensors
8. Head-up display
9. Manual headlamp beam height adjustment

Central control bar



1. Hazard warning lamps
2. Central locking
3. Grip control
4. Hill Assist Descent Control
5. **Climate** touch screen menu (depending on version)
6. Touch screen home page (depending on version)
7. Front demisting – de-icing
8. Rear screen demisting – de-icing

Labels

"Ease of use and comfort - Front fittings - Wireless smartphone charger" section:



"Safety - Child seats - Child seat at the front" section:



"Safety - Child seats - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:



"Safety - ISOFIX mountings" section:



"Safety - Manual child lock" section:



"Driving - Stop & Start", "Practical information - Bonnet" and "In the event of a breakdown - Changing a bulb" sections:



"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - Temporary puncture repair kit" section:

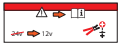




"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery" section:



Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglamps to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

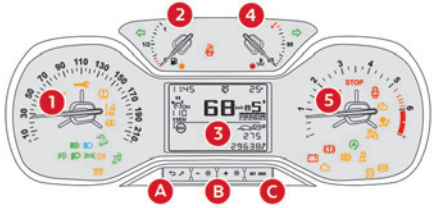
Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
– before a long journey.
– at each change of season.
– after a long period out of use.
Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system has a fault, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

LCD text instrument panel



Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Fuel gauge
3. Display screen
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)

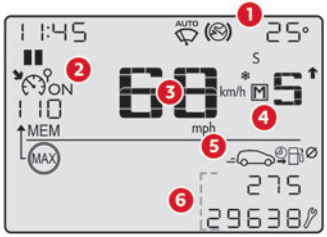
Control buttons

A. Resetting the service indicator.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.

B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.

C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

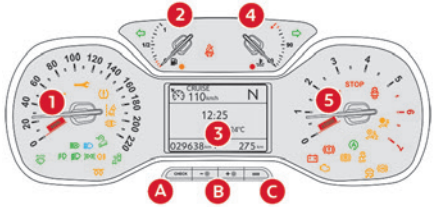
Display screen



1. Outside temperature
2. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
4. Gear shift indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport and Snow modes with an automatic gearbox
5. Trip computer and Stop & Start time counter.
6. Display area: trip distance recorder (miles or km), service indicator or range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), total distance recorder, alert messages or state of functions

If the vehicle is not equipped with an audio system or touch screen, this display screen allows you to configure certain equipment.
For more information on **Configuring equipment for vehicles without a screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Matrix instrument panel



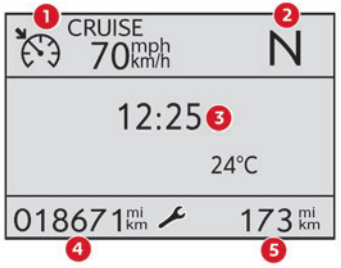
Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Fuel gauge
3. Display screen
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)

Control buttons

A. Resetting the service indicator
Alert log display
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range associated with AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km)
Tyre pressure status information display
B. General lighting dimmer
C. Resetting the trip distance recorder

Display



1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition
2. Gear shift indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport mode indicator with an automatic gearbox
3. Display area: alert messages or state of functions, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km)
These functions are displayed in turn when the ignition is switched on
5. Trip distance recorder (miles or km)

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

If a red or orange warning lamp comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

If a lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.
(1): **You must stop the vehicle**.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system or power steering or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Parking brake

Fixed.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Braking

Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.
Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Door(s) open

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.
A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access, accompanied by an audible signal.
A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

12 V battery charge

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).
Carry out (1).
Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Maximum engine coolant temperature

Fixed.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.
Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine self-diagnostic system

Fixed.
A major engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Engine self-diagnostics system

Fixed.
A minor engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (3).

Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.
There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out (2).

Fixed.
The emissions control system has a fault.
The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) without delay.

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Fixed.
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Under-inflation

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.
The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Fixed.
The system is deactivated.
The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Airbags

Fixed.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is set to the "**ON**" position.
In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is set to the “**OFF**” position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Particle filter (Diesel)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.
The particle filter is nearing saturation.
As soon as traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.
The low level in the additive tank has been reached.
Top up without delay: carry out (3).

Low fuel level


Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
When it first comes on, there is **approximately 5 litres of fuel** remaining in the tank (reserve).
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Water in Diesel fuel filter (depending on version)


Fixed.
The Diesel fuel filter contains water.
Carry out (2) without delay. Risk of damaging the fuel injection system!

Lane departure warning system


Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.
A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.
Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.


Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message.
The system has a fault.
Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (3).


Fixed.
The system has been deactivated.
If there is an unexpected change of direction, you will no longer be warned by the system.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)



On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).
Top up the AdBlue®.



Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).
It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi)



Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A malfunction of the SCR emissions control system has been detected.
This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.



Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.
Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.



Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).
To start the engine, carry out (2).

Service


Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.

Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Engine pre-heating (Diesel)

Temporarily on
(up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).
When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.
Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.
When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:
– the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
– the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.
If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Rear foglamp

Fixed.
The lamp is on.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Blind spot monitoring

Fixed.
The function has been activated.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Fixed.
The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).

Flashing.
The function is regulating the speed of the vehicle.
The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.

Stop & Start

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Direction indicators

Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Front foglamps

Fixed.
The front foglamps are lit.

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed.
The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving**/**Vehicle** menu).
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Foot on the brake

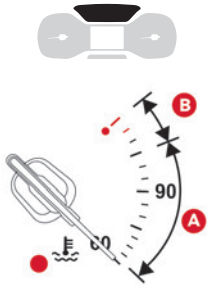
Fixed.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.
With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic front wiping is activated.

Indicators

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:
– In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
– In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.
The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:
– The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
– An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

i The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner

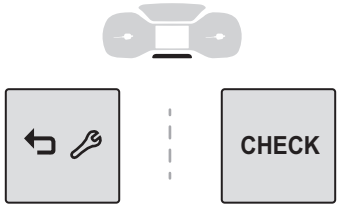
On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.
Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp.)
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
► Switch the ignition off.



► Press and hold this button.
► Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.
► Release the button when **=0** is displayed; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Reminder of the servicing information

You can access the servicing information at any time.
► Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
The servicing information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by the message "**Oil level correct**".

Low oil level

This is indicated by the message "**Oil level incorrect**" on the instrument panel, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

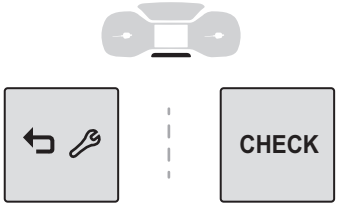
AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of driving range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



► Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

You can view the range information by pressing the "**Diagnostic**" button after selecting the "**Driving functions**" tab in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is below the reserve level: driving range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km). Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)** and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/ indicator lamps on	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is a risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "**Emissions control fault**" message.

The alert is triggered while driving when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, for as long as the cause of the fault persists.

If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.
The AdBlue warning lamp flashes and a message is displayed ("**Emissions control fault: starting prevented in X miles (kms)**" or "**NO START IN X miles (kms)**"),

indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

! Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "**Emissions control fault: Starting prevented**" or "**NO START IN**" is displayed.

! **To restart the engine**
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

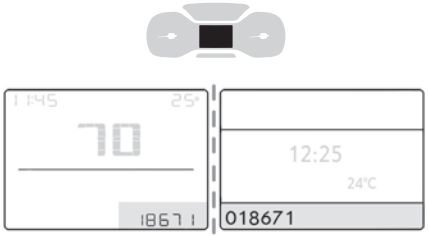
Distance recorders

With the ignition on, the distances are permanently indicated. They are deactivated about 30 seconds after switching the ignition off. They are displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles):

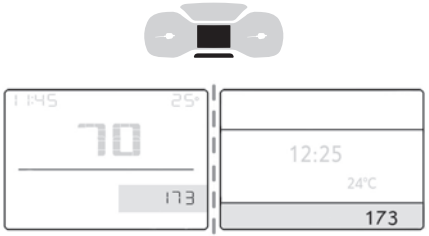
the road speed must be displayed in the local country's official unit (km/h or mph).
The unit is changed via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder



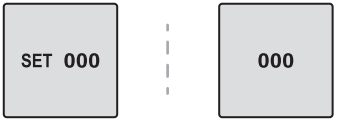
This recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

Trip distance recorder



It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



► With the ignition on, press the button until dashes appear.

Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen

If your vehicle does not have an audio system or a touch screen, you can still configure some equipment by using the **LCD text instrument panel** display.

Control buttons

SET 000 A long press of this button takes you to the configuration menu, a short press confirms.

− ☼ + ☼ Pressing one of these buttons lets you move in a menu, a list; change a value.

Pressing this button takes you back up a level or cancels the current operation.

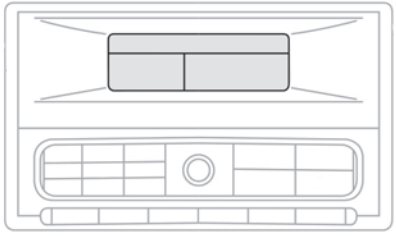
Display screen menus

– LIGHTING :
  • GUIDE LAMPS (Guide-me-home lighting),
  • DIR HEADLAMPS (Directional headlamps).
– DRIVE ASSIST :
  • COLLISION ALT (Automatic emergency braking),
  • VIGILANCE ALT (Fatigue Detection System),
  • ADVISED SPEED (Speed limit recognition).
– COMFORT :
  • REAR WIPE REV (Automatic windscreen wiper when reversing).

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

– the time,
– the date,
– the exterior temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
– visual parking sensor information,
– the audio source being listened to,
– telephone or hands-free kit information,
– alert messages,
– settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

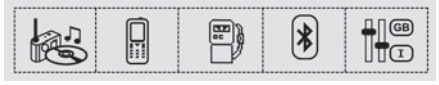
Controls



On the audio system control panel, use the following buttons:

MENU Access the **main menu**
▲ or ▼ Scroll through the items on the screen
◀◀ or ▶▶ Change a setting value
OK Validate
Back Abandon the current operation

Main menu



► Press the **MENU** button for access to the **main menu**:
  • "Multimedia",
  • "Telephone",
  • "Trip computer",
  • "Connections",
  • "Personalisation-configuration".

► Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.

“Multimedia" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate radio functions (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or set the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).
For more information about the "Multimedia” application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics” section.

“Telephone" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.
For more information about the "Telephone” application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics” section.

“Trip computer" menu



This menu allows you to consult information concerning the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

It summarises the alert messages of the functions, displaying them on the screen.

“Connections" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free kit, playing of audio files).
For more information about the "Connections” application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics” section.

“Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:
– “Define the vehicle parameters".
– “Display configuration".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows the following equipment to be activated / deactivated, depending on the version and/or country of sale:
"**Lighting**"
– "Directional headlamps",
– "Follow-me-home headlamps",
– "Welcome lighting".
"**Comfort**"
– "Rear wipe in reverse gear".
"**Driving assistance**"
– Auto. emergency braking,
– Fatigue Detection System,
– Speed recommendation.
For more information on the different equipment, refer to the corresponding sections.

Display configuration

This menu allows you to change the language used by the display from a defined list.
This menu gives access to the following settings:
– “Choice of units".
– “Date and time adjustment".
– “Display personalisation".
– “Choice of language".

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention when stationary.

Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:
– the heating / air conditioning controls,
– menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
– audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
and, depending on equipment, allows:
– the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
– the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice),
– access to the internet services and navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! **As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.
Use is possible in all temperatures.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Workflow

Use the buttons on each side of the touch screen to access the menus, then use the buttons that appear on the touch screen.
Certain functions may be displayed over 1 or 2 pages.
To deactivate / activate a function, press OFF/ ON.
To modify a setting (lighting duration, etc.) or access additional information, press the symbol for the function.

After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

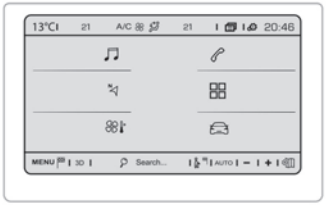
OK Use this button to confirm.

Use this button to return to the previous page.

Menus



7-inch touch screen



9-inch touch screen

Home page.
Allows access to the menu carousel on the 9-inch touch screen.

Radio Media.
Refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Mirror Screen or Connected navigation (depending on equipment)**.**
Refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Air conditioning.
Allows adjustment of the various settings for temperature, air flow, etc.
For more information on **Heating**, **Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Telephone.
Refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Applications.
Allows the display of the connected services available.
See “Audio equipment and telematics” section.

Vehicle or Driving (depending on equipment)**.**
Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.
The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".

Volume control/mute.
Refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Press with three fingers on the touch screen to access the menu carousel.

Upper bar

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Reminder of the air conditioning information, and access to a simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
– Reminder of information from the **RadioMedia** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions (depending on equipment).
– Notification zone (SMS and Email) (depending on equipment).
– Access to the **Settings**.

Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Information display

Details are displayed successively.

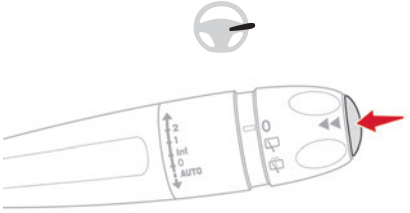
– The current information tab with:
  • trip mileage.
  • range.
  • current fuel consumption.
  • the Stop & Start time counter.
  • information on the speed limit recognition system (depending on version).
– Trip **1** with:
  • average speed.
  • average fuel consumption.
  • distance travelled for the first trip.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, a 2nd trip is available.

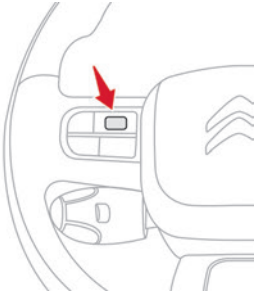
– Trip **2** with:
  • average speed.
  • average fuel consumption.
  • distance travelled. for the second trip.

Trips **1** and **2** are independent and are used identically.

For example, trip **1** can be used for daily figures and trip **2** for monthly figures.



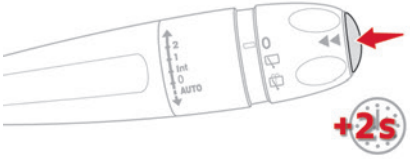
► Press the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk.



► Or, depending on equipment, press the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Trip reset

With LCD text or matrix instrument panel



► When the trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.



► Or, depending on equipment, press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.

With LCD text instrument panel



► When the trip is displayed, press the reset button in the instrument panel for more than two seconds.

A few definitions…

Range

(miles or km)

Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).
This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.
When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated during the last few seconds.
This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

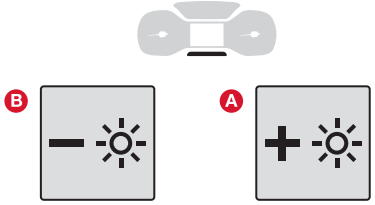
Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Lighting dimmer

This control lets you manually adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen according to the exterior light level.
It only works when the vehicle's lamps (other than daytime running lamps) are on, and in night mode.

Two buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting, or button **B** to decrease it.
Release the button when the desired brightness is reached.

Touch screen

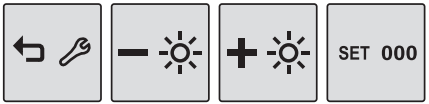


► In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The brightness can be set differently for day mode and night mode.

Setting the date and time

Without audio system



Set the date and time via the instrument panel display.



► Press and hold this button.



► Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

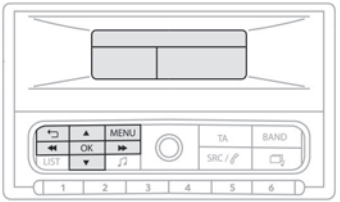


► Briefly press this button to confirm.



► Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to record the change.

With audio system



► Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.

► Press the "◄◄" or "►►" buttons to select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then press the **OK** button.

► Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Display configuration" menu, then press the **OK** button.

► Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Date and time adjustment" item, then press the **OK** button.

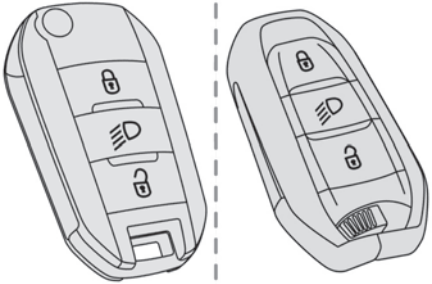
► Press the "◄◄" or "►►" buttons to select the setting to modify. Confirm it by pressing the **OK** button.

► Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **OK** button.

► Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **OK** button to select the **OK** box and confirm or press the **Back** button to cancel.

Remote control / Key

Remote control function

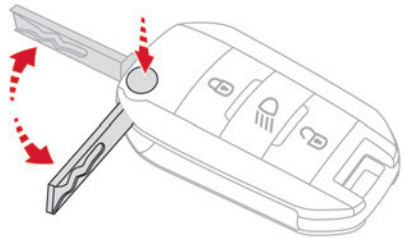


Depending on version, the remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions:
– Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
– Unlocking/Locking the boot.
– Unlocking/Locking the fuel filler flap.
– Remote operation of lighting.
– Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
– Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
– Locating the vehicle.
– Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.
The remote control includes a conventional key that allows the central unlocking/locking of the vehicle using the door lock, as well as starting and switching off the engine.
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Built-in key

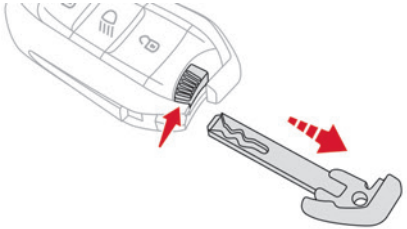
Depending on version, using the remote control built-in key, you can perform the following operations:
– Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
– Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
– Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
– Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.
– Switching on the ignition and starting/switching off the engine.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



► To unfold or fold the key, press the button.

With Keyless Entry and Start



► To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Unlocking the vehicle

► Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

When the unlocking button is pressed, the flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
– The unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
– The deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking

► Press this button.

When the locking button is pressed, the lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
– The locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.

– The activation of the alarm for other versions.

If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place.
However, if the vehicle is equipped with the alarm, it is fully activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm was activated beforehand, the alarm is reactivated automatically.
Locking also deactivates the central locking button, located on the dashboard.

Deadlocking



Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

► Press the locking button again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators for versions without alarm).

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:
– The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on for 30 seconds.



► Press this button.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

Advice

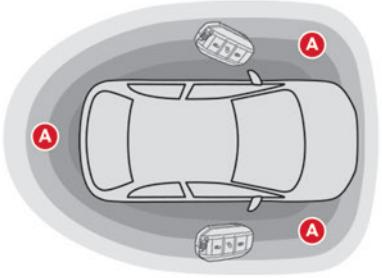
Remote control
The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-theft protection
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

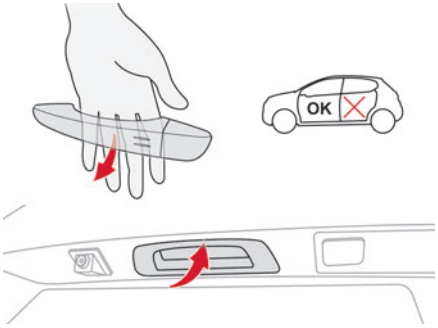
Keyless Entry and Start



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the

electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**.

Unlocking the vehicle

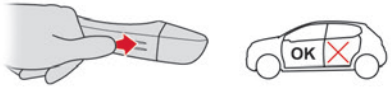


► With the electronic key on your person in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors, or press the tailgate opening control.

The flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
– the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
– deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



► With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press your finger or thumb on the handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.
It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

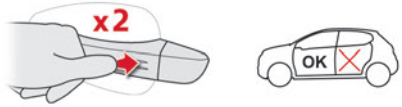
For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave the electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Deadlocking



Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



► With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press your finger or thumb on the handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.
► Within five seconds, press the front door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Startsystem has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place.
However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after

about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

! To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use.
To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Start system, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Electrical interference**
The electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices such as telephones (switched on or on standby) or laptop computers, strong magnetic fields, etc.

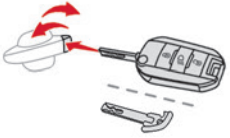
Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:
– Remote control battery discharged.
– Remote control malfunction.
– Vehicle battery discharged.
– Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.
In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.



► Insert the key into the door lock.
► Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
► Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
– Central locking malfunction.
– Battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left-hand door

► Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the front or rear of the vehicle to lock or unlock the door.

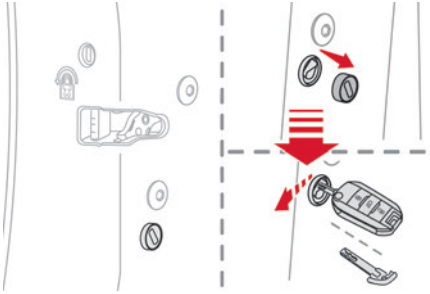
Other doors

Unlocking

► Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking

► Open the doors.
► For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
Refer to the corresponding section.



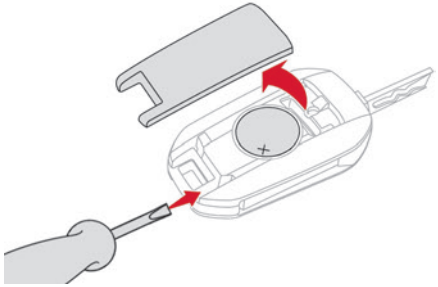
► **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
► Insert the key into the socket without forcing it, then turn the latch towards the inside of the door.
► Remove the key and refit the black cap.
► Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

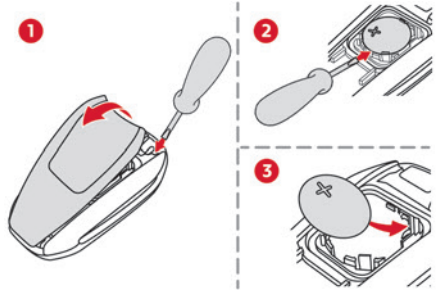
A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



With Keyless Entry and Start



► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
► Remove the flat battery from its housing.
► Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
► Reinitialise the remote control.
For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

! This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns!
Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

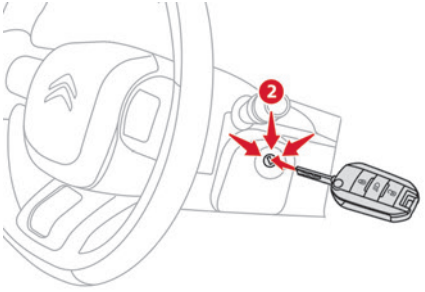
! Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!
Replace the battery with the same type.

! Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

Reinitialising the remote control

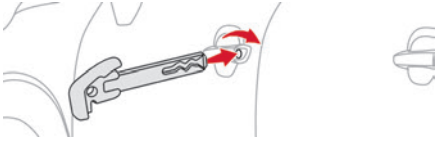
Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

Without Keyless Entry and Start

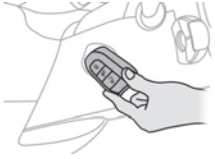


► Switch the ignition off.
► Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
► Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.
The remote control is now fully operational again.

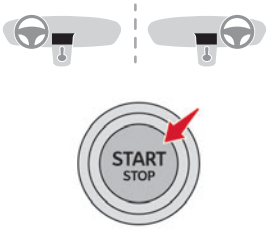
With Keyless Entry and Start



► Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.



► Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
► **With a manual gearbox,** place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox,** while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.



► Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Opening

From outside

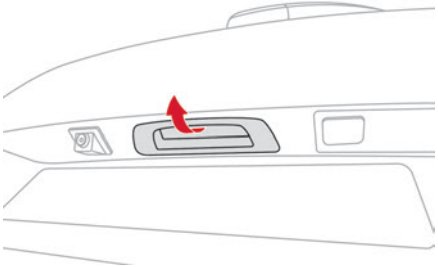
► After unlocking the vehicle or with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

From inside

► Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

Boot

Opening



► With the vehicle unlocked or with the Keyless Entry and Start electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
► Lift the tailgate.
For more information on the **Remote control** or on the **Keyless Entry and Start**, please refer to the corresponding section.

! If there is a fault or if it is difficult to move the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it checked as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to prevent the problem becoming worse, and potentially causing the tailgate to drop and thereby inflicting serious injuries.

Closing

► Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

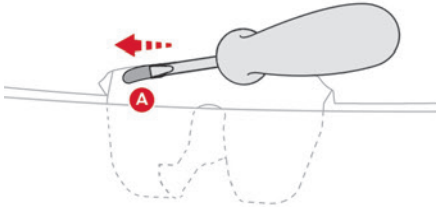
! In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

► Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.

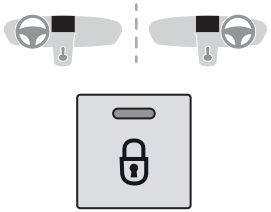


► Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
► Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Central locking



Manual

► Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.
The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

! Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

i **When locking/deadlocking from the outside**
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.
► After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.

► After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):
► Press the button until an audible signal is triggered and a confirmation message appears.

Transporting long or voluminous objects
Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked.
Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.
Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

Work on the alarm system
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation/Deactivation

► Lock or deadlock/unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system (confirmed by the button's red indicator lamp coming on/going out and the direction indicators coming on).
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked,

but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:
– Slightly open window.
– Washing the vehicle.
– Changing a wheel.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
► Get out of the vehicle.
► Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

i To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
► Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
The interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered ten times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:
► Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
► Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
► Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

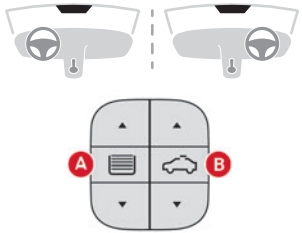
► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Panoramic sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.
► To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



A. Sunroof blind control

B. Sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.

Precautions

! Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof.
Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it.
Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves).
If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. Any intermediate position is possible.

i Depending on the speed of the vehicle, the partially open position may vary to improve the acoustics.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.
If something is trapped when operating the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind by pressing the control in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.
The roof anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Opening/Closing

► To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear of the vehicle.
► To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front of the vehicle.

Operation of buttons

► Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof or blind fully.
► Pressing the button again stops the current movement.
► When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
► When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.
► When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once without passing the point of resistance opens or closes it fully.

i The sunroof and windows, then the blind, can be closed by holding down the door

locking control. The manoeuvre stops as soon as the locking control is released.

i Closing of the blind is limited by the position of the sunroof: the blind cannot go further than the front of the movable glass. During simultaneous movements of the sunroof and blind, the blind automatically stops or resumes movement depending on the position of the sunroof.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, reinitialisation is required.

► Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.

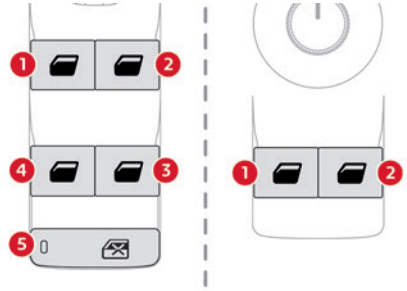
► With the ignition on, fully close the sunroof and blind.

► Press and hold the front part of button **B**, until the sunroof and blind move slightly, then hold for a further 1 second before releasing.

► Wait 2 seconds and then press and hold the front part of button **B**. The blind and the sunroof will open and close, one after the other. When both are completely closed again, hold for a further 2 seconds and release.

i If there is an operating fault, restart the whole procedure.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear (depending on version)
4. Left-hand rear (depending on version)
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats (depending on version)

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch, without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation of the front electric windows

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the resistance point: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed.
Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Anti-pinch function of the front electric windows

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear window controls (depending on version)



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the windows of the rear doors, irrespective of their position.
When the indicator is on, the rear controls are inhibited. When the indicator is off, the rear controls are active.

Reinitialising the electric windows

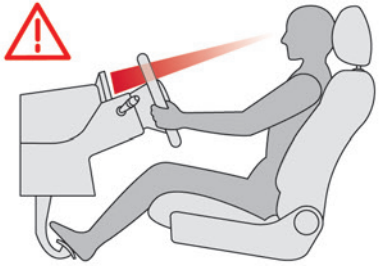
After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.
The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.
For each window:
► Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
► Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Correct driving position

For safety reasons, adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

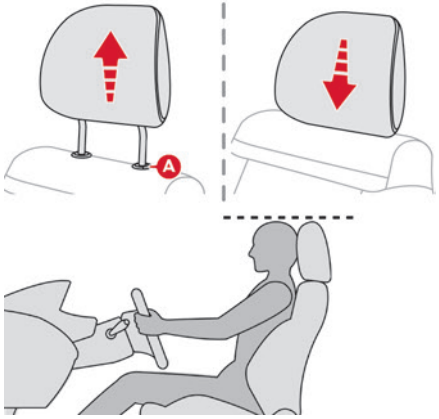
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:
– head restraint height.
– seat backrest angle.
– seat cushion height.
– longitudinal seat position.
– steering wheel height and reach.
– rear view mirror and door mirrors.



Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Front head restraints

Adjusting the height



Upwards:
► Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.
Downwards:
► Press lug **A** to lower the head restraint.

The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the occupant's head.

Removing a head restraint

► Pull the head restraint fully up.
► Press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
► Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
► Push the head restraint fully down.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
► Adjust the height of the head restraint.

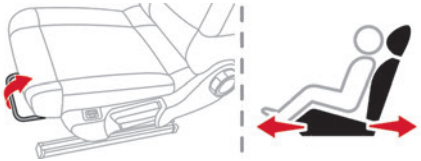
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Front seats

For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Adjustments

Longitudinal

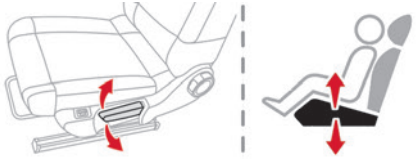


► Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
► Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Height

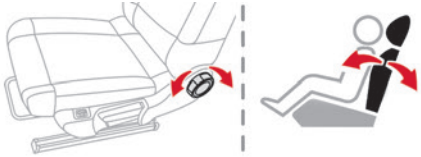
(driver only)



► Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until you obtain the position required.

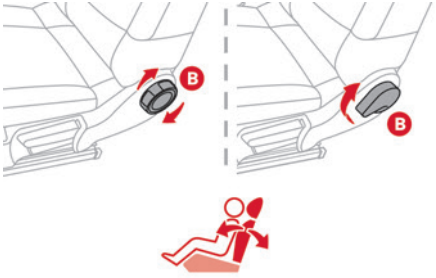
Backrest angle

(driver)



► Turn the knob to obtain the desired angle.

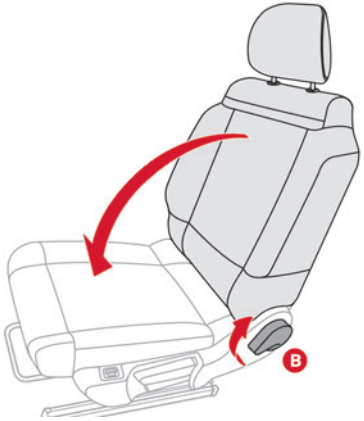
(passenger seat)



► Turn knob **B** or pull control **B** upwards to obtain the desired angle.
► When the backrest is correctly angled, release the control to lock it.

! To prevent the backrest from suddenly folding forwards and hitting you, hold the backrest with your back or hand while adjusting.

Passenger seat backrest table position



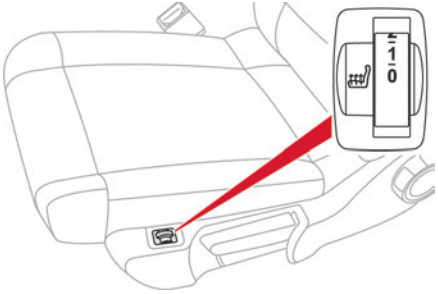
! Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.

► Place the head rests in the low position.
► Pull control **B** at the back to the front and tilt the backrest forward.
To return to the normal position, guide the backrest backwards until it locks into place.
This position, together with that of the rear seats, allows you to transport long objects inside the vehicle.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
When the front passenger seat is fully folded, only the outer rear seat behind the driver can be occupied by a passenger.

! Do not place hard, heavy or sharp objects in the centre of the backrest to ensure that you don't damage rear lining behind the backrest.
When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the folded backrest can turn into dangerous projectiles.

Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

► Use the adjustment knob to switch on and select the level of heating required:
0 : Off.
1 : Low.
2 : Medium.
3 : High.

The front seats can be heated individually.

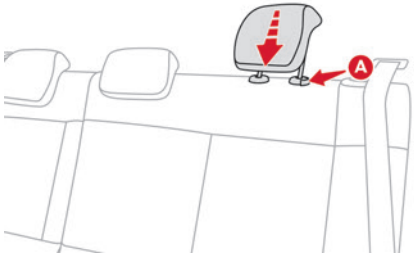
Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

! Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
– Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
– Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
– Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
– Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Rear seats

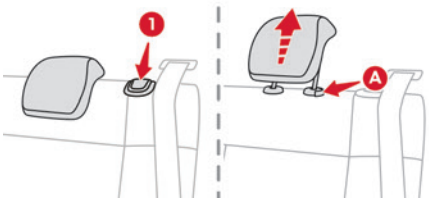
Bench seat with a fixed cushion or on rails (depending on version) and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot loading space.

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:
– A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
► Pull the head restraint fully up.
– A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint



► Release the backrest using control **1**.
► Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
► Pull the head restraint fully up.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

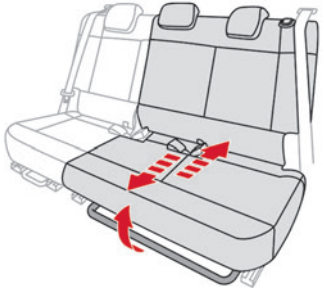
► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.
► Push the head restraint fully down.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Longitudinal seat adjustment (depending on version)

! Folding or unfolding the seats must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

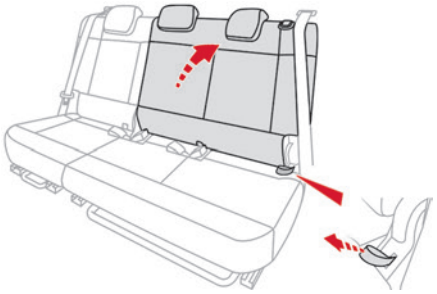
Each 2/3 - 1/3 part can be adjusted individually.



► Raise the control and slide the bench seat forwards or backwards.

Adjusting the backrest angle (depending on version)

Several adjustment positions are possible.



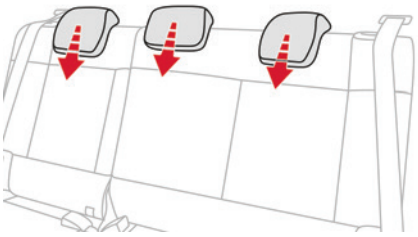
► Move the seat forward.
► Pull the strap forward, then tilt the backrest to the desired position.

i Sit in the seat to perform the adjustments.

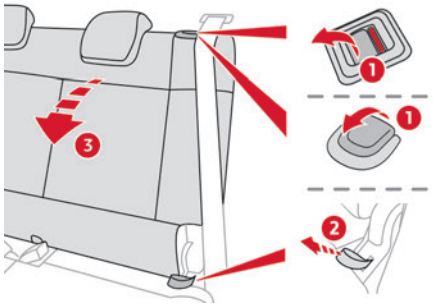
Folding the backrests

! Manoeuvring the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

First steps:



► Lower the head restraints.
► If necessary, move the front seats forward.
► Pull the seats fully back (depending on version).
► Check that no person or object will interfere with folding down the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.).
► Check that the outer seat belts are properly tensioned along the pillars, that the central belt is stowed and that the tongues of the three belts are correctly in the storage position.
Depending on version, the seat backrests are equipped with a handle (bench seat with fixed cushions) or a strap (bench seat on rails).



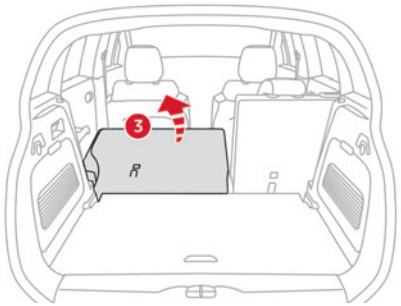
► Operate backrest release handle **1** or pull strap **2**.
► Guide backrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

If the backrest is equipped with a strap, it it not necessary to guide it down.

If the backrest is equipped with a handle, its red indicator is visible when it is released.

Repositioning the backrests

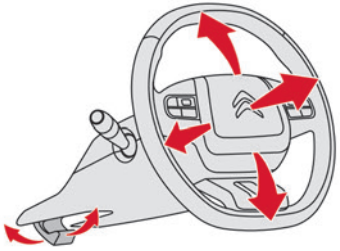
First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



► Put backrest **3** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the release handle **1** has properly returned to its position and that the red indicator is no longer visible (depending on version).
► Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the operation.

Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - risk of severe injury!

Steering wheel adjustment

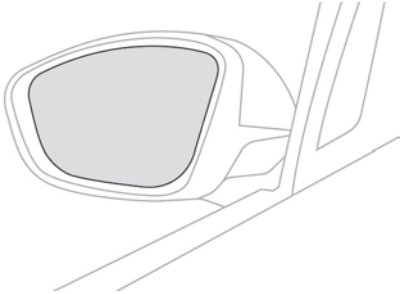


► When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
► Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
► Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

! For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

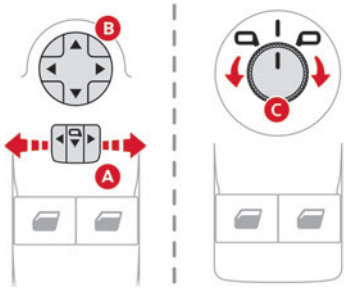
Door mirrors



Demisting/De-icing

The demisting/de-icing of the door mirrors works with the demisting/de-icing of the rear screen.
For more information on **Rear screen demisting/de-icing**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment



► Move control **A** or turn control **C** (depending on the version you have) to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
► Move control **B** or **C** (depending on the version you have) in any of the four directions to adjust.
► Return control **A** or **C** (depending on the version you have) to its centre position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.
The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).
► Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.



► From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position.
► Pull control **A** backwards.

► Lock the vehicle from the outside.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric unfolding

The door mirrors are unfolded electrically when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control in the central position towards the rear again.

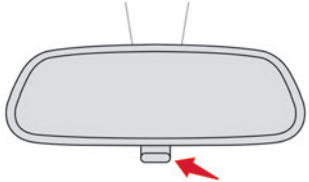
Folding/unfolding when locking/unlocking the vehicle can be deactivated. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position

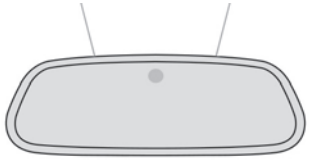


► Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
► Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

► Adjust the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged.
The system is deactivated if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Ventilation

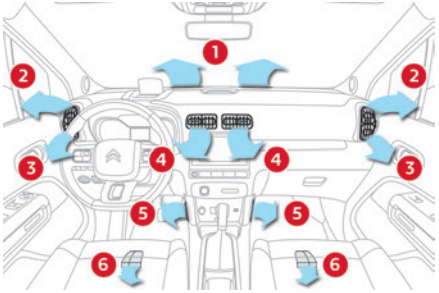
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on version, the controls are accessible in the **Climate** touch screen menu or are grouped together on the centre console panel.
The demisting/de-icing controls for the windscreen and the rear screen are located below the touch screen, or on the centre console panel located below the audio system.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/de-icing vents
2. Front side window demisting/de-icing vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.

► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.

► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.

► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

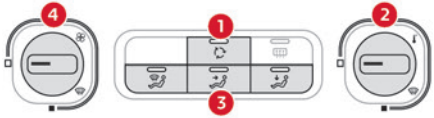
► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Stop & Start

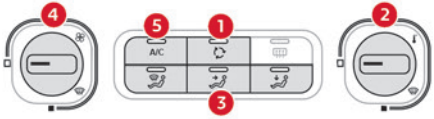
The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on the **Stop & Start** system, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating/Manual air conditioning



The heating only operates when the engine is running.



The manual air conditioning operates when the engine is running.

1. Recirculation of interior air
2. Temperature adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Air flow adjustment
5. Air conditioning on/off

Adjusting the temperature

► Turn the control from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

Adjusting the air flow

► Turn the knob **4** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

Adjusting the air distribution

Central and side air vents.

Footwells.

Windscreen and side windows.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

Air conditioning ON / OFF

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

– lower the temperature, in summer,

– increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

A/C ► Press this button to switch the air conditioning on/off.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

Press the **Climate** menu button located on the touch screen or on the central control bar (depending on version) to access the system controls.



1. Temperature adjustment
2. Air flow adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Air conditioning on/off
5. Automatic Comfort programme on/off
6. Interior air recirculation
7. Access to the secondary page

Temperature adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **1** to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, press the temperature setting button up or down until **LO** or **HI** is displayed.

Automatic comfort programme

Activation/Deactivation

► Press button **5** to activate or deactivate the air conditioning system's automatic mode.
The air conditioning system operates automatically: the system optimises the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment based on the comfort level selected.
► Go to the secondary page by pressing button **7** to adjust the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the available settings.
"**Soft**": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
"**Normal**": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).
"**Fast**": provides strong and effective air flow.



► To change the settings, press the button several times.
The setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, when AUTO mode is deactivated, the previous selection is retained.
Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if this was deactivated.

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to reach the required level of comfort more quickly.
The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Adjusting the air flow

► Press one of the buttons **2** (**-** or **+**) to increase or decrease air flow.
The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in according to the request.
When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.
"**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

► Press the buttons **3** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.


Windscreen.


Central and side air vents.


Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function.

All three buttons can be activated simultaneously. In this case, priority is given to the air flows from the central and side air vents, and from those in the passenger footwells.

Air conditioning on / off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It is used to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.
► Press button **4** to turn the air conditioning on/off.
When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

Ventilation function with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the **air flow** settings and the **air distribution** in the passenger compartment for a duration which depends on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windscreen and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from polluted air in areas of heavy traffic and inside tunnels.

i When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

► Press button **6** to recirculate the interior air or allow the intake of exterior air.

! Avoid the prolonged recirculation of interior air in order to ensure a good supply of fresh air and reduce the risk of misting (especially when several passengers are on board or when the air is cold/damp, etc.).

Front demist - defrost

These markings on the control panels indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

During the winter period, direct the side air vents towards the side windows to optimise their demisting and defrosting.

With control panel on the centre console

On/Off

► To switch the system on, set the temperature and air flow controls to the corresponding marked position.
► To switch the system off, set the air flow control to position **0**.

► Press this button to direct air towards the "Windscreen" position. Its indicator lamp comes on.
► Check that interior air recirculation is deactivated: its indicator lamp must be off.

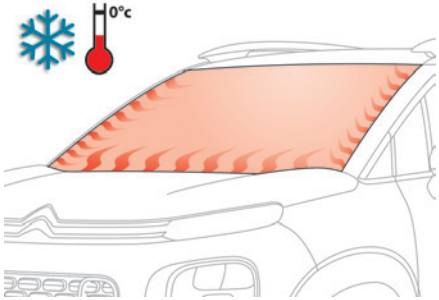
With touch screen

On/Off

► To switch the system on, press this button.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
► Press this button again to switch it off.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

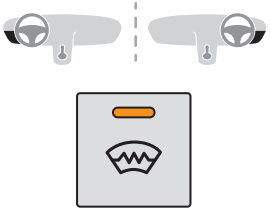
i With Stop & Start, when demisting - defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Heated windscreen



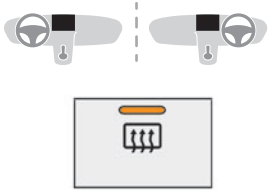
In cold weather, this system heats the whole of the windscreen, as well as the area alongside the windscreen pillars.
Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps to prevent the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

Switching on/off



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).
The function is activated when the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically when the engine is switched off.

Rear screen demist - defrost



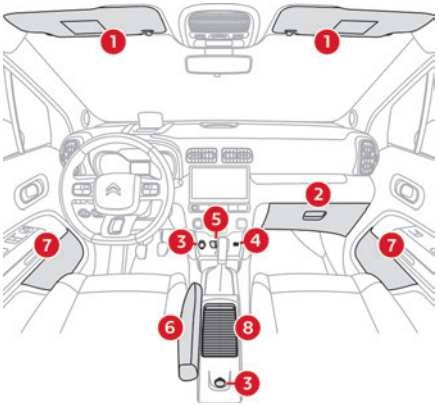
Switching on/off

► To switch the system on, press this button to defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.
► To stop the defrosting operation before it automatically turns off, press this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Rear screen demisting - defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

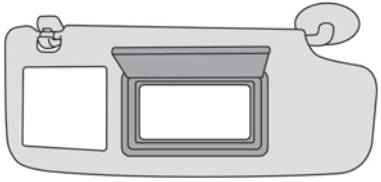
Front fittings



1. Sun visor
2. Glove box
3. 12 V accessory socket (max. 120 W).
4. USB socket
5. Open storage compartment
6. Front armrest (depending on version)
7. Storage trays
8. Open or closed storage compartment (depending on version)

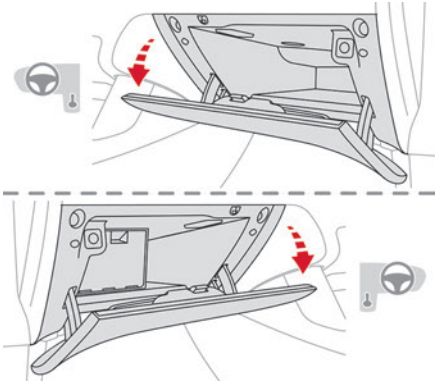
Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire - risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

Sun visor



The sun visors are fitted with a vanity mirror with concealing flap and a card holder (or ticket holder).

Glove box

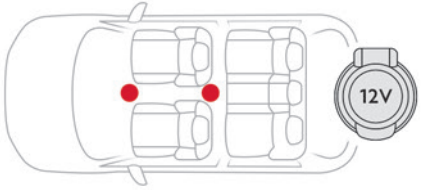


► To open the glove box, pull the handle towards you.

It contains the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.

! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

12 V accessory sockets



► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Wireless smartphone charger



This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

! Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



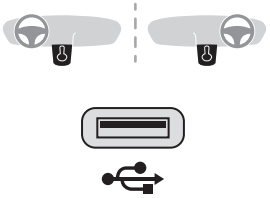
Checking operation

The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator lamp is fixed orange:
– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.
or
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.
If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

USB socket

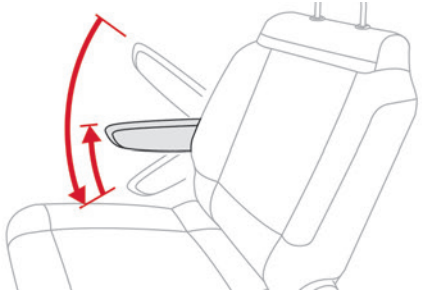


The USB socket is located in the central storage compartment.
The USB socket allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.
It reads the audio files that are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
These files can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or those on the touch screen.

i When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Front armrest

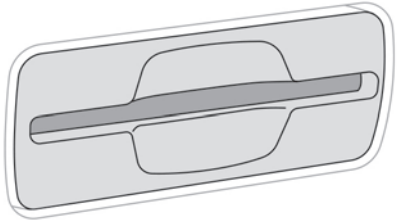
Height adjustment



► Lower the armrest completely.
► Lift it again to the desired position (low, intermediate or high).
► Once it is in the high position, lift it to unlock it and bring it to the low position.

Card holder

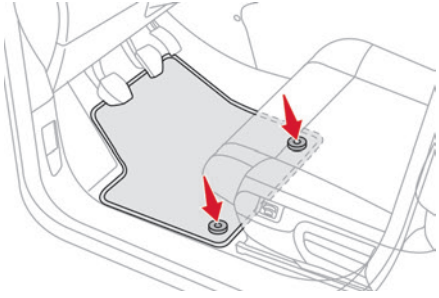




This allows the storage of a toll ticket or a parking card for example.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
► To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

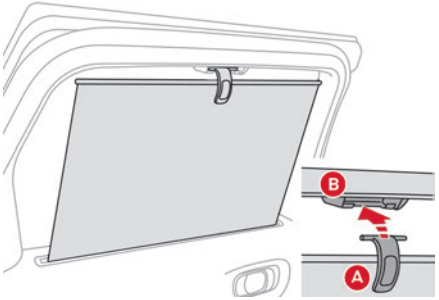
Rear fittings

Seat backrest pockets

They are arranged behind the front seats.

Side blinds

Fitted to the windows in the second row, they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.



► Pull the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

ℹ Always guide the blind slowly using the tab, both up and down.

Clothes hooks

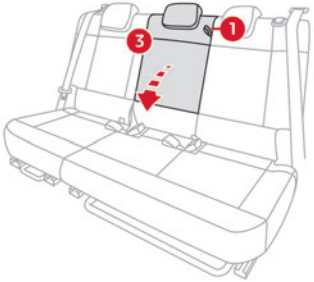


They are located above each rear door.

Rear armrest and ski flap

It gives direct access to the boot for transporting long objects.

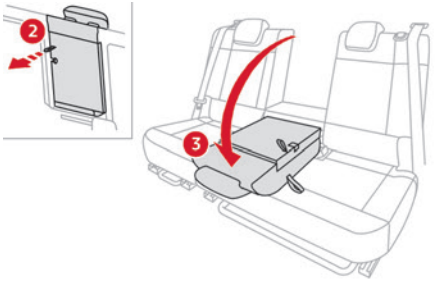
Folding from the passenger compartment



► Pull strap **1** towards you to unlock the armrest.

► Guide armrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

Folding from the boot

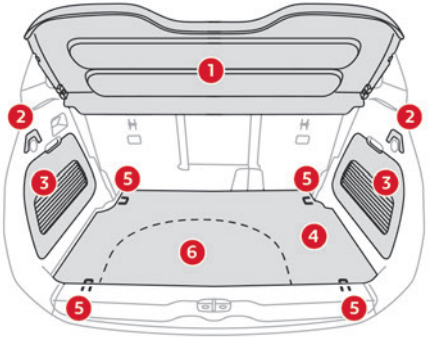


► Pull strap **2** towards you to unlock the armrest.

► Push armrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

! Please note: when putting the armrest back in place, ensure that it is correctly locked and that the red indicator of each strap is no longer visible. Otherwise, it could compromise the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

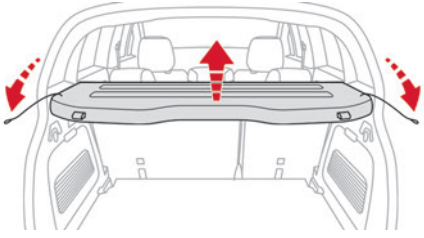
Boot fittings



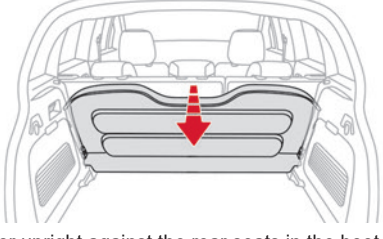
1. Rear shelf
2. Hooks
3. Closed side storage compartments
4. 2-position boot floor
5. Stowing rings

6. Storage compartment beneath the boot carpet

Rear shelf

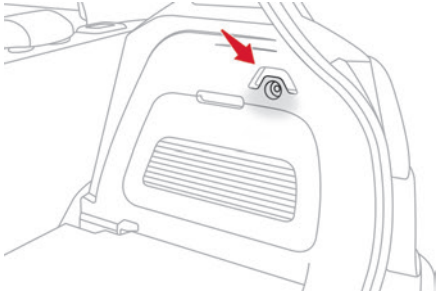


To remove the shelf:
► unhook the two cords,
► raise the shelf slightly to unclip it, then remove it.
There are several ways of storing it:
– either upright behind the front seats,



– or upright against the rear seats in the boot.
To refit the shelf:
► position the shelf so that the notches are exactly on the fixing pins,
► push the shelf down towards to pins to clip it,
► hook the two cords.

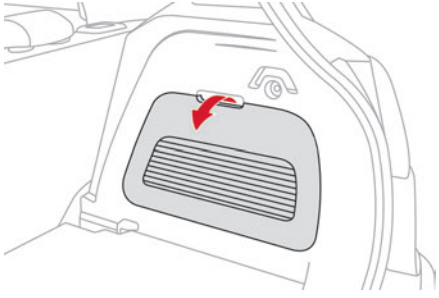
Hooks



They are used to hang shopping bags.

! Take care to only hang lightweight bags.

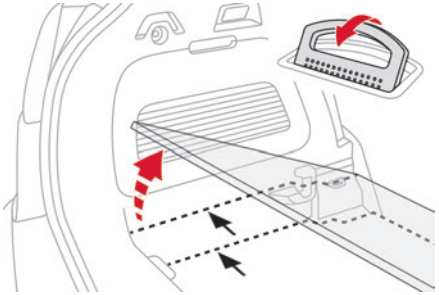
Closed storage compartments



► Pull upwards to unclip and open the removable grill.
Depending on the version you have, the storage compartment on the right may contain the vehicle tools.

2-position boot floor

This two-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:
– High position (**100 kg max**.): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down and fully back (depending on version).
– Low position: maximum boot volume.



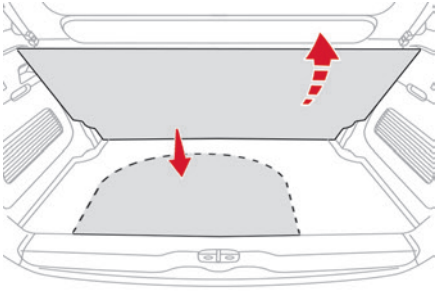
To change the height:

► Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.

► Push the floor fully forwards to place it in the desired position.

Ensure that the boot is empty before moving the boot floor.

Storage well



► Raise the boot floor as much as possible to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

– a temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit,

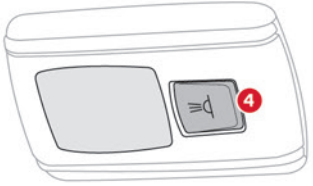
– a spare wheel alone or with the tool kit.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front reading lamps





3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear reading lamps

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

– when the vehicle is unlocked.

– when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

– when a door is opened.

– when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

– when the vehicle is locked.

– when the ignition is switched on.

– 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In "Permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

– With the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes.

– In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.

– With the engine running, unlimited.

When the front courtesy lamp is in the "Permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, unless it is in the "Permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "Permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps

► With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior ambient lighting

Soft passenger compartment lighting improves visibility inside the vehicle in low-light conditions.



Boot lamp

It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

– When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
– In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
– With the engine running, unlimited.

Lighting control stalk

! Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!

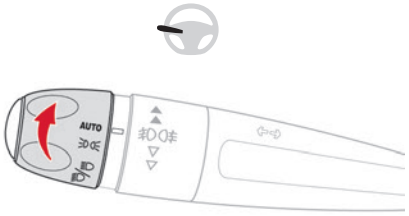


i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

i **Travelling abroad**
Vehicles equipped with manual headlamp beam height adjustment:
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

Main lighting

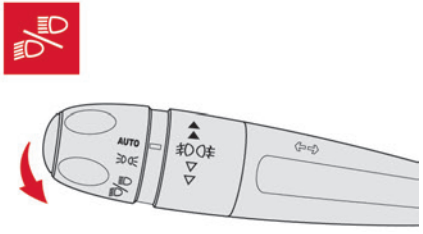


AUTO Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps

Sidelamps only

Dipped or main beam headlamps

Headlamp dipping



► Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.
In "**AUTO**" and sidelamps mode, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlamps on directly ("headlamp flash").

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

Foglamps

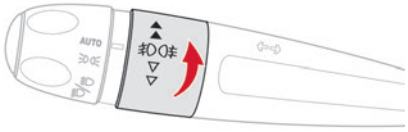
Rear foglamp

It only works if the sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps are on.



► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn it on/off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) the foglamp and the sidelamps remain on.

Front foglamps and rear foglamp



They operate with the sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

► Press and rotate the ring:

– forwards a 1st time to switch on the front foglamps.

– forwards a 2nd time to switch on the rear foglamp.

– backwards a 1st time to switch off the rear foglamp.

– backwards a 2nd time to switch off the front foglamps.

When the lamps are switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

! Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).

Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

i **Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off**

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

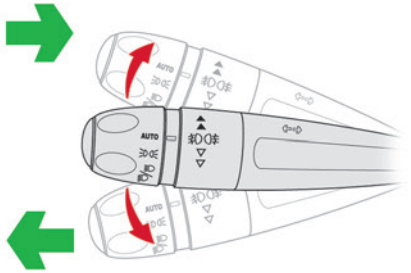
i **Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition**

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "**AUTO**" position, then to the desired position.

If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.

They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

Direction indicators



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

i If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Parking lamps

(Depending on version)

Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

► Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk

upwards or downwards, depending on the side of the traffic (e.g. when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk down to light up on the left).
This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.
► To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of lamps

With the lighting control stalk in the “**AUTO**” position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle’s lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

i The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

These LED lamps at the front and rear of the vehicle light up automatically when the engine starts.
They perform the following functions:
– Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position **"AUTO"** with adequate ambient light).
– Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position **"AUTO"** with low ambient light or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i In daytime running lamps mode, the diodes are brighter.

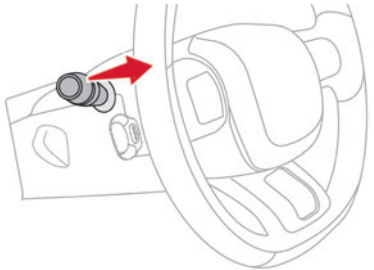
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.
You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the vehicle configuration menu.

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, in poor light, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.
Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

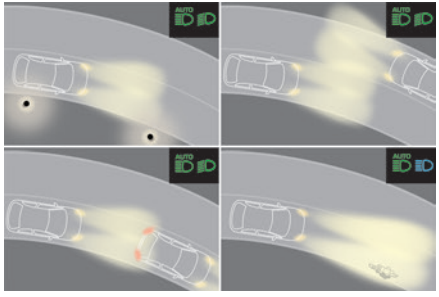
Operating limits
The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
– When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
– If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
– If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.
The system is not able to detect:
– Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
– Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
– Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Maintenance
Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Automatic headlamp dipping

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.
When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

– The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

– The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglamps are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall).

When the foglamps are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favourable again, the function is automatically reactivated.

This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

► Switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.

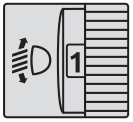
If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

► To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

Headlamp beam height adjustment





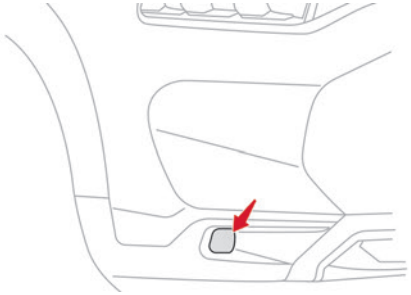
To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. (Initial adjustment)
Driver only or driver + front passenger

1. Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + maximum authorised load

2. Driver only + maximum authorised load

Cornering lighting



This system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres).



Without/With cornering lighting

Switching on/off

This system starts:

– when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on.

or
– from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
It becomes inactive:
– below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
– above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
– when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
This system is activated by default.

Without audio system

► In the "**LIGHTING**" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "**DIR HEADLAMPS**" (directional headlamps).

With audio system

► In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Directional headlamps**".

With touch screen

► In the **Driving / Vehicle** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Lighting**" and activate/deactivate "**Directional headlamps**".

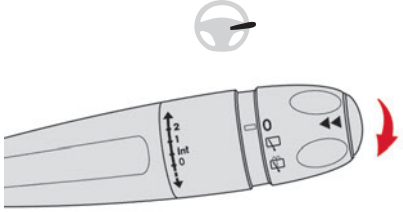
Wiper control stalk

Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

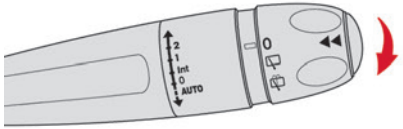
Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)
0	Switching off
↓	Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO	Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.
The screenwash then the windscreen wipers operate for a pre-determined time.

The height of the front screenwash jets can be adjusted. To change the factory setting, insert a needle into each of the jets, then direct them.

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Rear wiper

► Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Off

Intermittent wiping

Screenwash-wipe

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Without audio system

► In the "**COMFORT**" menu on the instrument panel display, activate/deactivate "**REAR WIPE REV**". (automatic wiping in reverse).

With audio system

In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Rear wipe in reverse gear**".

With touch screen

► In the **Driving / Vehicle** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Comfort**" and activate/deactivate "**Rear wiper in reverse**".

In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/ Vehicle** menu.

Rear screenwash

► Turn the ring as far as it will go and hold it in position.
The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned.
A final wiping cycle is performed when screen washing ends.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
– handle them with care.
– clean them regularly using soapy water.
– avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
– replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



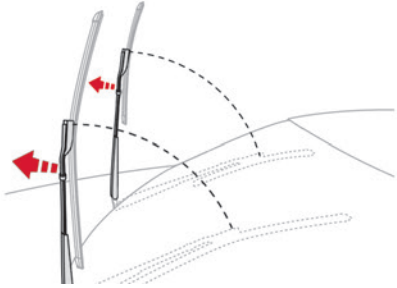
Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.
► Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/Refitting at the front



► Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
► Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.

Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

► Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
► Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

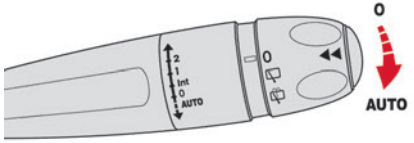
► Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
► Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
► Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In **AUTO** mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.
Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



► Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
AUTO Depending on version, this indicator lamp appears on the display or on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

► Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).



Depending on version, this indicator lamp disappears from the display or goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

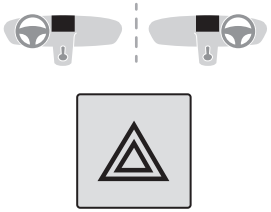
! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**
Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**
The relevant certificates are available on the http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/ website.

Hazard warning lamps



► Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

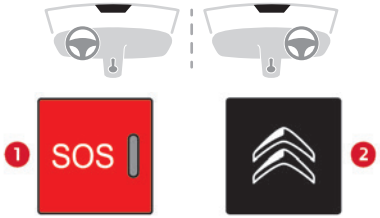
When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Horn



► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



1. Localised Emergency Call

2. Localised Assistance Call

Localised Emergency Call (PE112)

► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.
"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, irrespective of the deployment of any airbags.

i This service is available free of charge.

Operation of the system

– Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction.
– The indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
In the latter 2 cases, the emergency and assistance call services may not work.
Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

i **Data processing**
All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.
Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call".
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Emergency Call" system used with the “112” European single emergency call number.
The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the “112” emergency number.

Data storage
Data contained in the system’s memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle’s three most recent locations are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data
You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort. You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Localised Assistance Call

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and CITROËN.
It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.

By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Localised Assistance Call" button to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

* According to the geographic coverage of ‘Localised Emergency Call’, ‘Localised Assistance Call’ and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:
– Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
– Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
– Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
– Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.
► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.


The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.


This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.
You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.


These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.


The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

► Or, depending on version, turn the **"Grip control"** knob to this position.

Deactivation is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the display of a message.

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on or at speeds over 31 mph (50 km/h).

Reactivation is manual below 31 mph (50 km/h).

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by CITROËN dealers.

In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.

All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Grip control

(Depending on version)

A special, patented traction control system, which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand.

This system, optimised for operation in a range of conditions, enables you to manoeuvre in most slippery conditions (encountered during normal passenger car use).

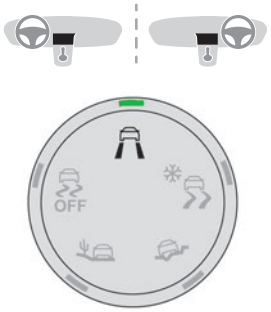
When combined with all-season Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to harness the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes



Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

i The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the operation of the engine or of the brakes in the event of a change of trajectory.
These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) and whenever the ignition is switched on.

i **Recommendations**
The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may occassionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving:
– Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. fuel pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.
– Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
– Crossing a waterway.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Hill Assist Descent Control system for medium to steep slopes, on tarmac or other road surfaces (e.g. gravel, mud).
This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.
During a descent, the system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

i For the system to activate, the gradient must be greater than 5%.
The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.
Otherwise, engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling.
With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

! When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

Operation

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.
The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

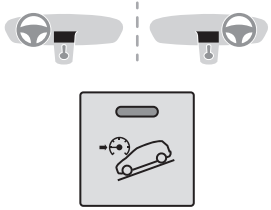




► To select the system, at speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until

its lamp lights up; this indicator lamp appears in green on the instrument panel.
The system becomes active at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).
► When the vehicle begins its descent, the driver can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:
– If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.
– If the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.
On a downward slope, with the vehicle stationary, if the driver releases the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.
The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.
If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the green indicator lamp in the button remains on.
Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.
You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off



► Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp also goes off in the instrument panel.
Above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on in green, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

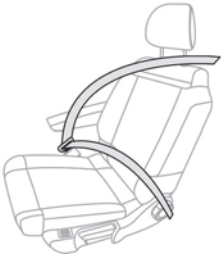
Seat belts

Inertia reel
The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.
Pyrotechnic pretensioning
This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
Force limiting system
This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced,

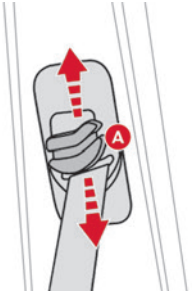
by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts



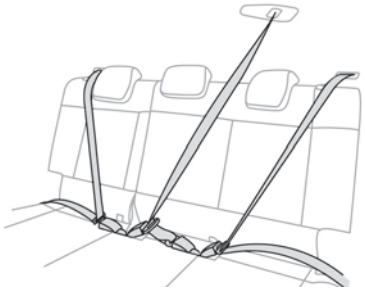
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Height adjustment



► To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

Rear seat belts

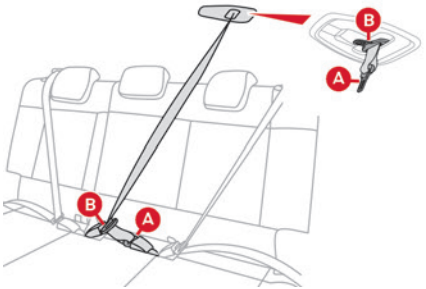


Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Seat belts, centre rear

The seat belt for the rear central position is integrated into the back of the roof.

Installation



► Pull the strap and insert tongue **A** into the left buckle.
► Insert tongue **B** into the right buckle.
► Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Removal and storage

► Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the button on buckle **A**.
► Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

Fastening



► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

► Press the red button on the buckle.
► Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened alerts



A. Front and rear seat belts not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp
3. Rear left seat belt warning lamp
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp
5. Rear right seat belt warning lamp

If the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened, when the ignition is switched on, the seat belts warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (**1** to **5**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display.

If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5**) comes on for around 30 seconds.

Above about 12 mph (20 km/h) and for 2 minutes, each warning lamp corresponding to an occupied seat whose seat belt is unfastened flashes, accompanied by an audible signal. After these 2 minutes, the corresponding seat warning lamp remains on until the driver or the front/rear passenger fasten their seat belt.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Installation
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
– be tightened as close to the body as possible.
– be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
– must only be used to secure one person.

– not show signs of tearing or fraying.
– not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

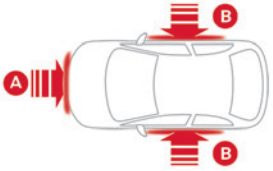
Airbags

General information

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
– In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
– In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

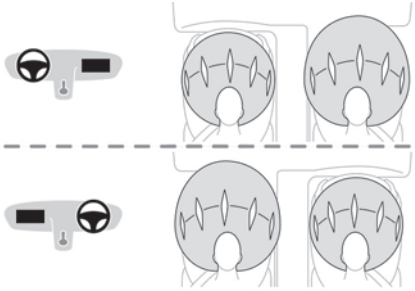
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

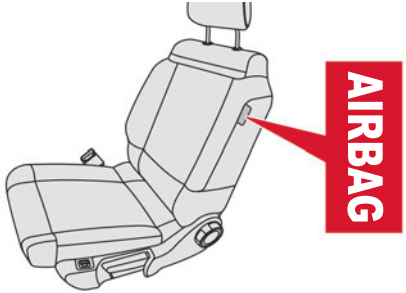


This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags



In the event of a serious side impact, this system protects the driver and front passenger to mitigate the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

This system helps provide greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof.

Child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 1,5 metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
– **Children weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– '**rearward facing**' up to the age of 3,
– '**forward facing**' over the age of 3.

! Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Advice

! An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! **Installing a booster seat**
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! **Additional protections**
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:
– a child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle,
– a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
– the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

Forward-facing or rearward-facing





► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
► Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front



► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **maximum rear longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

"Forward facing"



! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

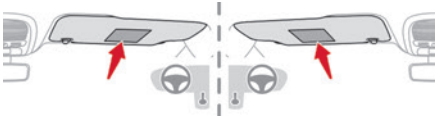
"Rearward facing"



! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.



Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



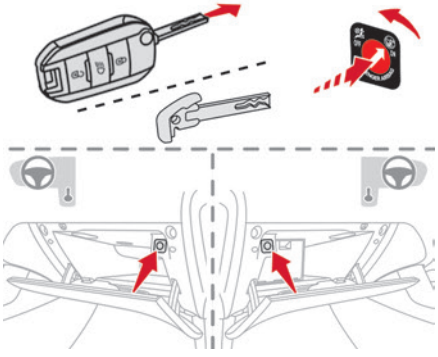
Passenger airbag OFF

! To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located inside the glove box.



With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe" Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg

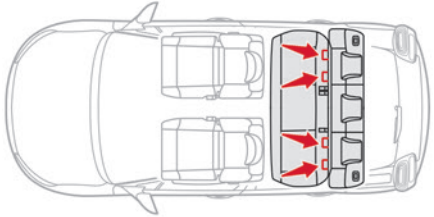
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX 2R" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the side rear seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg

L6 "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or on the rear side seats.

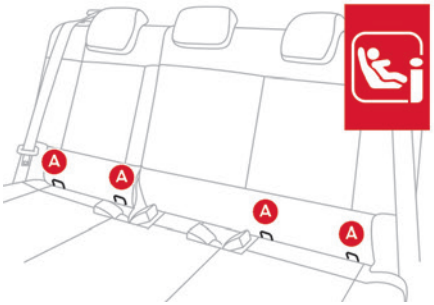
"ISOFIX" mountings

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:

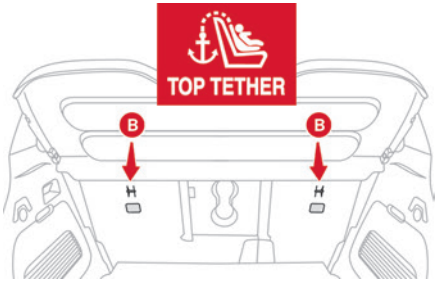


The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:

– Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.



The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.
– One ring **B**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for attaching seats fitted with an upper strap.



This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a front impact.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

► Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
► Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods.
► Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
► Tighten the upper strap.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)	"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**
	Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the possibilities for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats for the seat positions fitted with **ISOFIX** anchorage points in the vehicle.

	Seat number					
	Front seats (i)			Rear seats (i)		
	1	3		4	5	6
	3	1		4	5	6
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" **(b)**	Activated "ON" **(c)**			
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat	no	yes **(d) (j)**	yes **(d) (k)**	yes **(e) (f)**	no **(l)**	yes **(e) (f)**
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat	no	no **(l)**		yes	no **(l)**	yes
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no **(l)**		yes	no **(l)**	yes
"**Carrycot**" type child seat	no	no **(l)**		no	no **(l)**	no
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat	no	no **(l)**		R3 **(g) (h)**	no **(l)**	R3 **(g) (h)**
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat	no	no **(l)**		F3 **(g) (h)**	no **(l)**	F3 **(g) (h)**
Child booster seat	no	B3 **(d) (l) (m)**		B3 **(g) (m)**	no **(l)**	B3 **(g) (m)**

Rules:

– A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible with **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.

– A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible with **R1**, **R2** and **R2X**.

– A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible with **R1**.

– A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible with **F2X** and **F2**.

– A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible with **B2**.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated ("**OFF**").

(c) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated ("**ON**").

(d) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully backward position.

(e) To install a "**rearward facing**" or "**forward facing**" child seat on a rear seat, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.

(f) To install a "**rearward facing**" or "**forward facing**" child seat on a rear seat, move the rear seat backwards as far as possible, with the backrest straightened.

(g) Adjust the seat to the fully backward position.

(h) Adjust the head restraint to its highest setting or remove the head restraint.

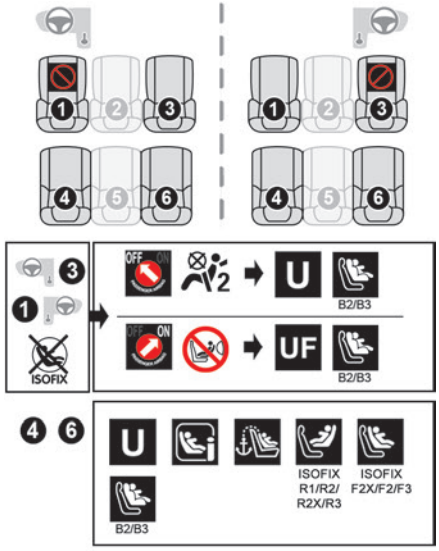
(i) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

(j) For universal child seat: groups 0, 0+ and 1.

(k) For universal child seat: groups 2 and 3 only.

(l) Seats not fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

(m) Remove the head restraint.



Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated**.

Front passenger airbag **activated**.

U Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing"** for all sizes and weight groups.

UF Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing"** for groups **1**, **2** & **3**.

Seat position where securing an **i-Size** child seat is authorised.

Presence of a **TOP TETHER** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the attachment of a **universal ISOFIX child seat**.

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

– **R1**: **ISOFIX** child seat for **baby**.
– **R2** and **R2X**: **ISOFIX reduced size** child seats.
– **R3**: **ISOFIX large size** child seat.

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

– **F2X**: **ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers**.
– **F2**: **ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
– **F3**: **ISOFIX full height** child seat.

Booster child seat:

– **B2**: **reduced width booster** seat.
– **B3**: **full width booster** seat.

Seat position not authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.

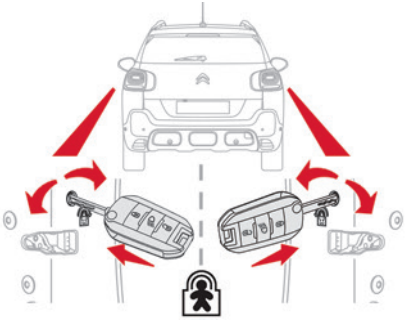
For seat adjustments, refer to the table **"Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats"**.

Manual child lock



The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle.
The red control is located on the edge of each rear door (indicated by a marking on the bodywork).

Activation/Deactivation



► To activate the child lock, turn the built-in key in the **red** control as far as possible:

- To the right on the left-hand rear door.
- To the left on the right-hand rear door.

► To deactivate the child lock, turn the key in the opposite direction.

! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock



This control prevents the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles.

Activation/Deactivation





► With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock.
A message is displayed, confirming activation/deactivation of the child lock.
When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside and/or to operate the rear electric windows from the driver's door.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

► Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
► Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
► Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
► Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
► During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).**The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.**
This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

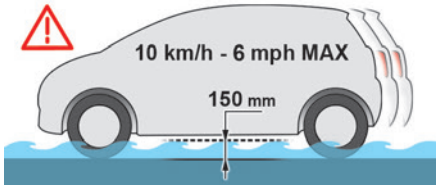
! Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire - risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

! **Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running**. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to your vehicle's electrical systems.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:
► Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
► Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
► Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
► Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.
On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.
► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
► Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Anti-theft protection

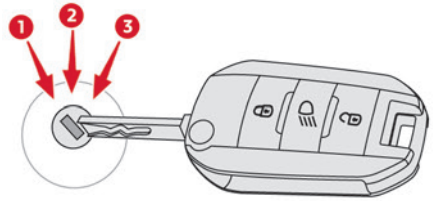
Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.
If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a CITROËN dealer.

For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave the electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.

Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

Key ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

1. **Stop**
   Inserting/removing the key, steering column locked.
2. **Ignition on**
   Steering column unlocked, ignition on, preheating (Diesel), switching the engine on.
3. **Starting**

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. This would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or the charging of accessories.
Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode. The power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied:

► With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.

► With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal.

► Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.

► Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

In certain cases, you may need to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (e.g. wheels turned to full lock).

► With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine has started, release the key and allow it to return to position **2**.

Petrol engines
After a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

► With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, to activate the engine preheating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off on the instrument panel, then turn the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor. Once the engine has started, release the key and allow it to return to position **2**.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.
In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying - risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine! Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Switching off the engine

► Immobilise the vehicle.

► With the engine at idle, turn the key to position **1**.

► Remove the key from the ignition switch.

► To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground. When leaving the vehicle, keep the key in your possession and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After the engine has stopped (position **1. Stop**), for a maximum combined duration of 30 minutes, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, courtesy lamps or dipped beam headlamps.

For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

Key left in
When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, if the key has been left in the ignition switch in position **1**.

If the key has been left in the ignition switch in position **2**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1**, then back to position **2**.

Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Start

The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.
If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.

Starting



► With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral and fully depress the clutch pedal.
► With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal.



► Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

Diesel engines

In negative temperatures and/or when the engine is cold, starting takes place only after the preheating warning lamp goes out.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:
► Keep the pedal fully depressed and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.
In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.

In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

Petrol engines
With Petrol engines, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Switching off

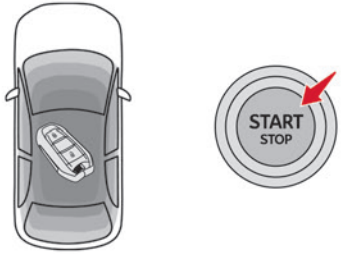
► Immobilise the vehicle using the parking brake.
► With a **manual gearbox**, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
► With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column.

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine



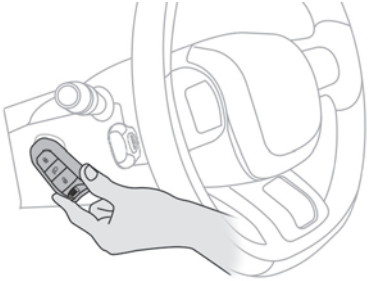
With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine (the instrument panel and accessories such as the audio system and the lighting will come on).
► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column, to enable the engine to be started if the system fails to detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



► Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
► **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



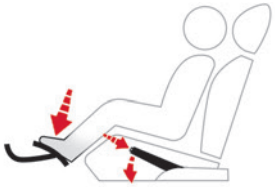
If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.
► To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for approximately 5 seconds.
In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Parking brake

Release



► Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.
When driving the vehicle, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, this means that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

Application

► Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise the vehicle.

! When parking on a slope, turn the wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to position **P** (automatic gearbox).
For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



► Fully depress the clutch pedal.
► Push the gear lever fully to the right, then backwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
– Always select neutral.
– Depress the clutch pedal.

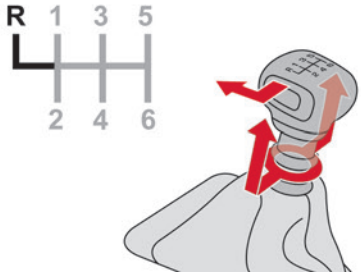
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

► Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



► Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left, then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

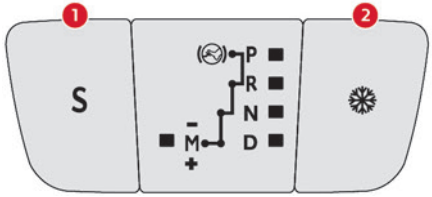
i As a safety precaution and to facilitate engine starting:
► Always select neutral.
► Press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:
– **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox:
- With the **Sport** programme for a more dynamic driving style.
- Or the **Snow** programme to improve driving in the event of poor grip.*

– **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.
In automatic mode, you can still change gear manually using the steering-mounted controls (e.g. when overtaking).

Gear selector module



1. **Sport** programme
2. **Snow** programme
(depending on country of sale)
P. Park
– Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied or released.
– Engine starting.
R. Reverse
– Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
N. Neutral
– Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied.
– Engine starting.
D. Automatic operation
M. +/- Manual operation
► To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.

* Snow programme: depending on the country of sale.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



When a position is selected in the grid with the gear selector, the corresponding indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (automatic operation)
S. **Sport** programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1...6. Gear engaged during manual operation
-. Instruction not accepted during manual operation

Foot on the brake

► Depress the brake pedal when this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. when starting the engine).

Starting the vehicle

► With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.
► Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, you will hear an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a message.
► With the engine running, depress the brake pedal.
► Release the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode.
► Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
► Gradually release the brake pedal.
The vehicle moves off immediately.

If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

► Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

"Sport" and "Snow" programmes

These two special programmes supplement automatic operation in specific conditions of use.

"Sport"

► Press this button once the engine has started.
"**S**"appears on the instrument panel.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic driving style.

"Snow"

► Press this button once the engine has started.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and traction when grip is poor.

Return to automatic operation

► At any time, press the selected button ("**S**" or "❄") again to exit the activated programme and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

To limit fuel consumption during an extended standstill with the engine running (for example, in a traffic jam), set the gear selector to **N** and apply the parking brake.

► Selecting position **M** enables sequential shifting between the six gears.
► To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.
The gearbox only changes gear if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions allow; otherwise, the rules for automatic operation are temporarily applied.
D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.
If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is shown.
It is possible to change from position **D** to position **M** at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The **Sport** and **Snow** programmes are inactive in manual operation.

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

Switching off the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, it is possible to engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

If the gear selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.
► Return the gear selector to **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on and a message is displayed, when the ignition is switched on.
In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a significant jolt (without risk to the gearbox) when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:
– If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed simultaneously.
– In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.

Automatic gearbox
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear;
– engaging reverse gear.

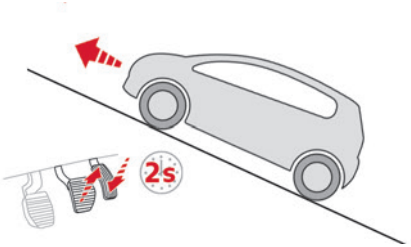
Hill start assist

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:
– The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
– Certain slope conditions are met.
– The driver's door is closed.

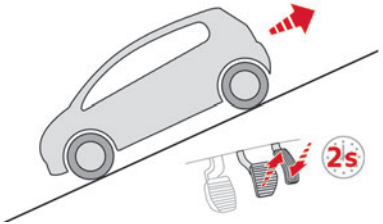
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp is on fixed on the instrument panel.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:
– provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox.
– provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

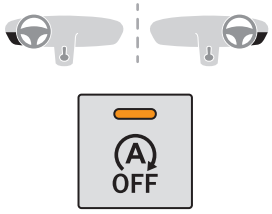
Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

With/Without audio system



► Press the button.
A message on the instrument panel confirms the change of status.
When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator lamp is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

With the touch screen button

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
A message on the instrument panel confirms the change of status.
When the function is deactivated, if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lamp

Function activated.

Opening the bonnet
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



Driving on flooded roads
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
– The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
– The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:
– **With a manual gearbox**: with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
– **With an automatic gearbox**: with the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, the brake pedal depressed until the vehicle stops or the gear selector in mode **N**, with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:
– Steep slope (ascending or descending).
– Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the **START/STOP** button).
– Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
– Demisting active.
– Braking assistance being used.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after

coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:
With a manual gearbox: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
With an automatic gearbox:
– With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
– With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
– With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
– With reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:
– Vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h).
– Some specific conditions (braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.).


In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

In the event of a malfunction, the button's indicator lamp flashes briefly, then remains on.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.
► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

12 V battery
The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system alerts the driver if one or more tyres suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tyre pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tyres.
– increases energy consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tyre pressures
This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.
► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
► If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a sporty driving mode.

The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

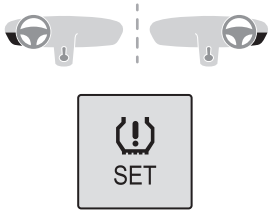
Reinitialisation

► The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

The reinitialisation of the system is done with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:
– Via the vehicle configuration menu for vehicles fitted with a touch screen.
– Via the button on the dashboard for vehicles without a touch screen.

With/Without audio system



► Press and hold this button.
Reinitialisation is confirmed by a high-pitched audible signal.
A low-pitched audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation operation has not been successful.

With touch screen

► In the menu **Driving / Vehicle**, select the tab **"Driving functions"**, then **"Reset under-inflation detection"**.
► Select **"Yes"** to confirm.
The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

"Space-saver" type spare wheel
The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.

These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.



Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors
The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the sensors and cameras.

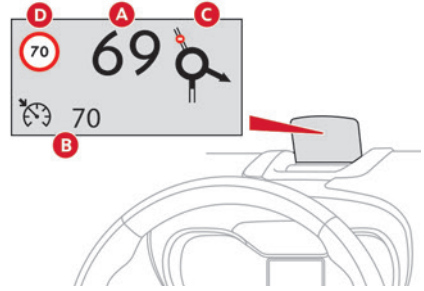
Mats/Pedal trims
The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade placed in the driver's field of vision to avoid the driver having to take their eyes off the road.

Information displayed during operation

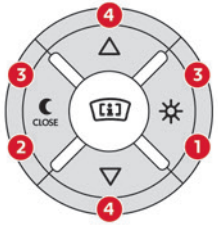


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:
A. The speed of your vehicle.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
C. If your vehicle is suitably equipped, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.
D. If your vehicle is suitably equipped, speed limit information.

For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the section **Audio equipment and telematics**.

Selector



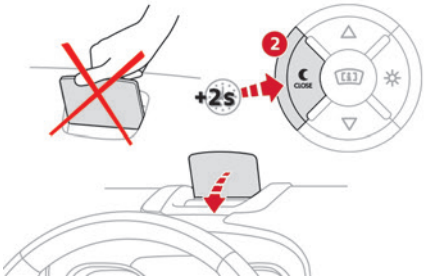


1. Switching on
2. Switching off (long press)

3. Brightness adjustment
4. Display height adjustment

Activation/Deactivation

► With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the projection blade.



► Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the projection blade.
The state of the system is saved when the engine is switched off and restored on restarting.

Adjusting the height

► With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using the buttons **4**:

- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

► With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using the buttons **3**:

- on the "sun" to increase the brightness,
- on the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

! When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the projection blade (or in its recess) so as not to impede its movement and correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.), the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the projection blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth, or detergent or solvent products, due to the risk of scratching the projection blade or damaging the non-reflective coating.

i This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are saved when the ignition is switched off.

Memorising speeds

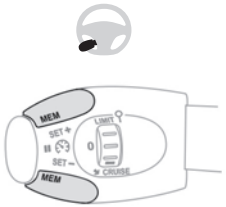
This function, used only for the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, lets you save speed settings that will subsequently be proposed for the purpose of configuring these two systems.
You can memorise multiple speed settings for each of the two systems.
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only change speed settings when stationary.

Changing a speed setting

Speed settings can be activated, deactivated, selected and changed in the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

"MEM" button

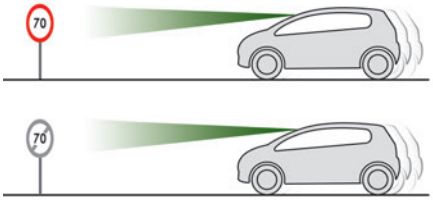


With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Road signs recognition

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



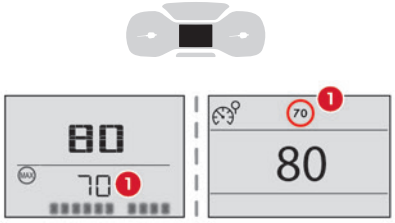
This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:
– Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
– Speed limit information from the navigation system's mapping.

! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

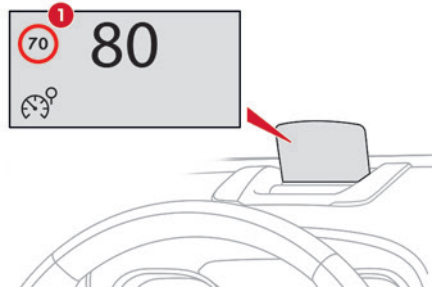
! Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Displays in the instrument panel



Head-up display



1. Speed limit indication

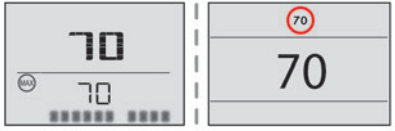
Speed display



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



The driver can adjust the vehicle's speed according to the information given by the system.

Activation/Deactivation

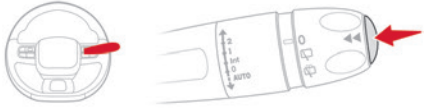
By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

Information display

With an LCD text instrument panel, the speed limit recognition information is displayed after the trip computer information.

To display it:



► Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.



► Or, depending on equipment, press the knob located on the **steering wheel**.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

– Poor weather (rain, snow).
– Atmospheric pollution.
– Towing.
– Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
– Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
– Young drivers.

The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

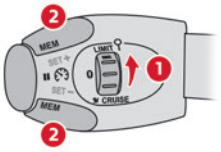
– Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
– Obsolete or incorrect maps.

Storing the speed setting

In addition to **Road signs recognition**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control 'store' button.

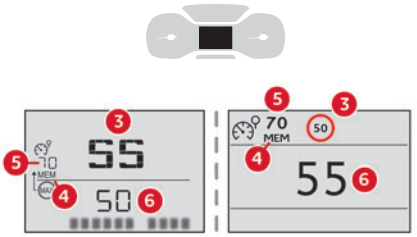
> For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering-mounted controls

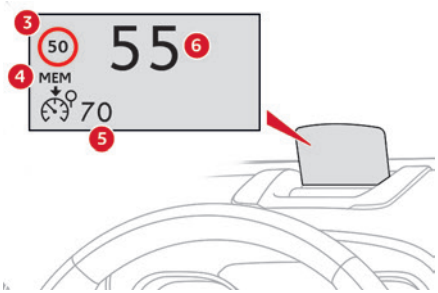


1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Display on the instrument panel



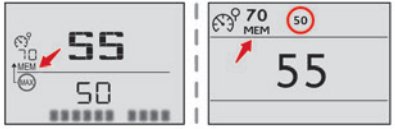
Head-up display



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Request to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed of the vehicle.
6. Current speed setting.

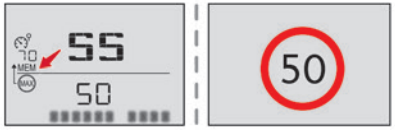
Storing the speed setting

► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

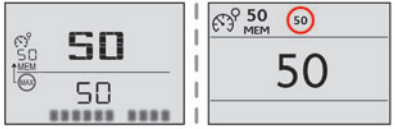


Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and a message prompting you to save it as a new speed setting. "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds on the display.

If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.



► Press button **2once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed, confirming the request.



► Press button **2again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
The display then reverts to its previous state.

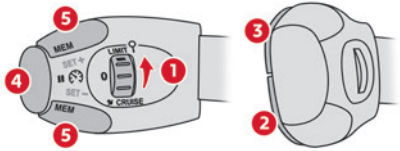
Speed limiter

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

Steering-mounted control

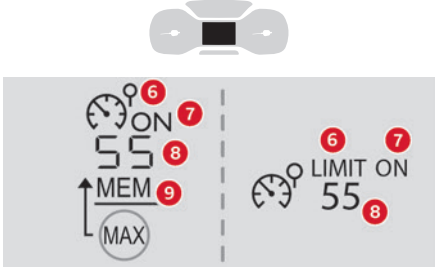




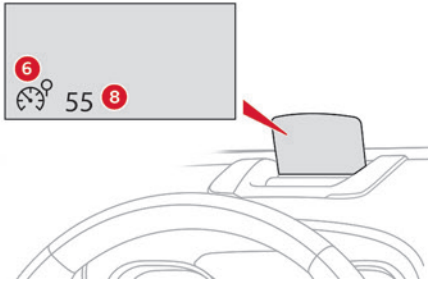
1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Speed limiter mode selection indication

7. Speed limiter on/pause status indication
8. Programmed speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition

Switching on/Pausing



► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.



► If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
► Pressing button **4** again temporarily pauses the function.

When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).
To modify the cruise speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition, as shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.
► Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.
When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"OFF"** position: speed limiter information is no longer displayed.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Exceeding the programmed speed setting
You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

Operating limits
Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic.
– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
– When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Cruise control

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

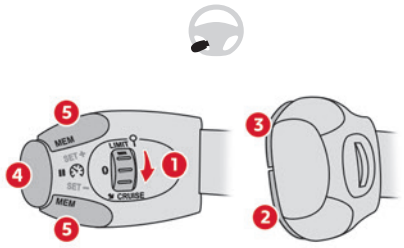


This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

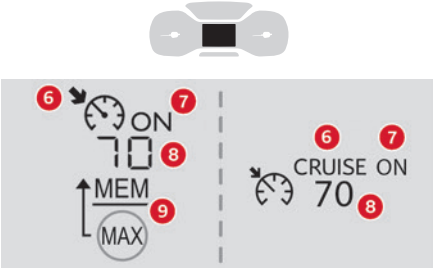
Steering-mounted control



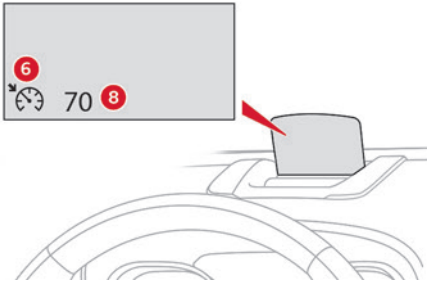
1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF
2. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ decrease speed setting
3. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Cruise control pause/resume status indication
8. Programmed speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.

► Press button **2** or **3** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.

► Release the accelerator pedal.

► Pressing button **4** temporarily pauses the function.

► Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

Cruise control must be active.
To modify the cruise speed setting, based on the current speed of the vehicle:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:
► Press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings.
► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.
To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (when overtaking, for example) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is temporarily deactivated and the programmed speed displayed flashes.
To return to the programmed speed, release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control resumes operation: the display of the programmed speed becomes fixed again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, with the vehicle speed above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**OFF**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system:

– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian.
– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or limit its severity.
This system is comprised of three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward.
ESC system operational.
ASR system activated.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with few bends.
In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
– Towing a trailer.
– Carrying long objects on roof bars.
– Vehicle with snow chains fitted.
– Before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running.
– When changing a wheel, working near a wheel or inside the engine compartment.
– Before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop.
– Towed vehicle, engine running.
– When a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version).
– If the brake lamps are not working.
– Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

! It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

! The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! Following an impact, the system is automatically deactivated.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front or with a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.



The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

► Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds: "Far", "Normal" or "Close".
The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel or on the head-up display.
The system takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

(orange)
Level 1: visual alert only, warning you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

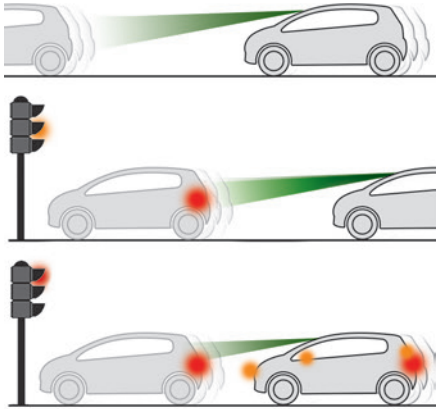
(red)
Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.
Level 3: in some cases, a vibration alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is not displayed when there is a stationary obstacle or when the "**Near**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function supplements braking in the event that the driver brakes, but not enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
The system aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:
– The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
– The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.

– The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.



This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from moving off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by firmly turning the steering wheel and/or firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

The brake pedal may vibrate slightly while the function is operating.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



These warning lamps light up on the instrument panel to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version). The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Distraction detection

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Depending on version, the function consists of either the "Coffee Break Alert" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.

It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Activation/Deactivation



The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Coffee Break Alert



The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

– With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.

– The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.

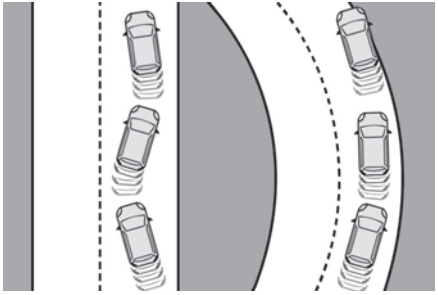
– The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby.

Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

Driver Attention Warning

Depending on version, the Coffee Break Alert system may be combined with the Driver Attention Warning system.



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).
At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Be vigilant!**", accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

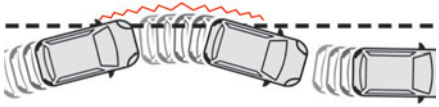
In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks);
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Lane departure warning system

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.
If the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the system triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Deactivation / Activation

The system is **activated** every time the ignition is switched on.





► To deactivate the system, press this button.
Deactivation is signalled by **the lighting of the indicator lamp** on the button and this warning lamp on the instrument panel.
Reactivation is carried out via another press; the indicator lamp on the button and the warning lamp go out.

Detection

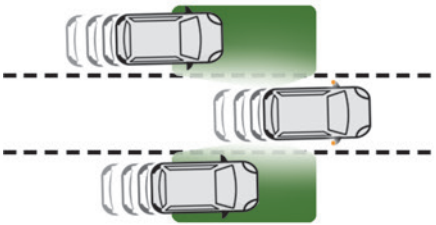
If an unexpected change of direction is detected, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal.
No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is activated and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Malfunction

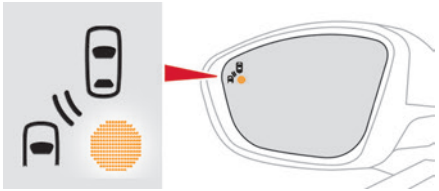
In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind spot monitoring

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.



The warning is given by a fixed warning lamp that appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
– immediately, when being overtaken;
– after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation/Deactivation

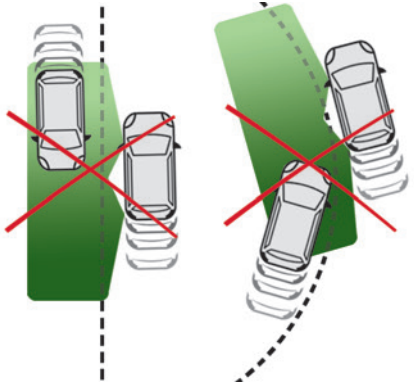
It is set via the**Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
When starting the vehicle, the warning lamp comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

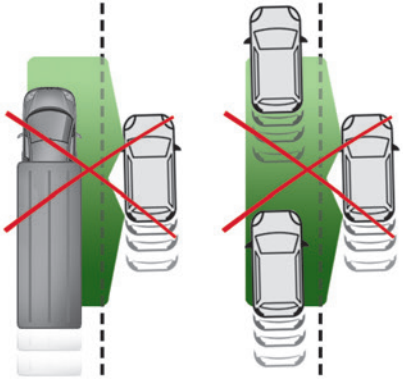
i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

Operating conditions

– All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
– The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
– When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
– Traffic is flowing normally.
– Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
– You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
– Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits





No alert is triggered in the following conditions:
– presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
– vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
– on winding roads or in case of sharp turns.
– when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (e.g. truck, bus), which is both detected in a blind spot from behind and present in the driver's field of vision from the front.
– quick overtaking manoeuvre.
– very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

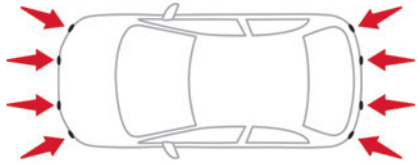
Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning lamp coming on and the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain climatic conditions (e.g. rain, hail).
In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Parking sensors

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

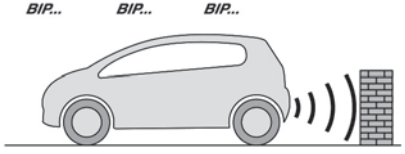


This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

Rear parking sensors

► Engage reverse gear to start the system (confirmed by an audible signal).
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

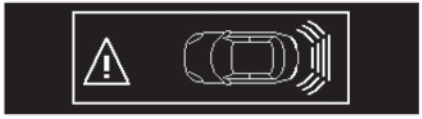
Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles within the sensors' detection zone.
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Visual assistance





This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle remains below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation

With/Without audio system





► To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **deactivated**.

With touch screen

► In the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Parking sensors**".

The system status is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Operating limits

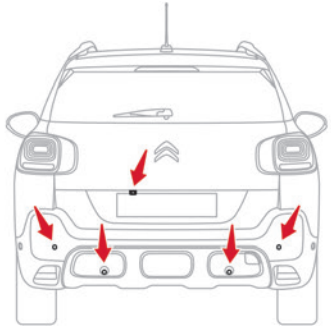
If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse gear, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

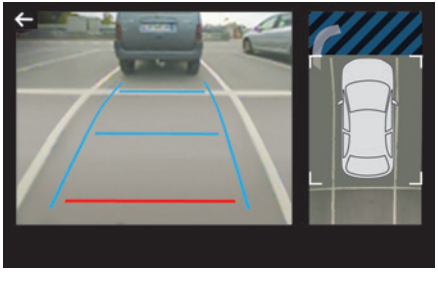
Top Rear Vision

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.





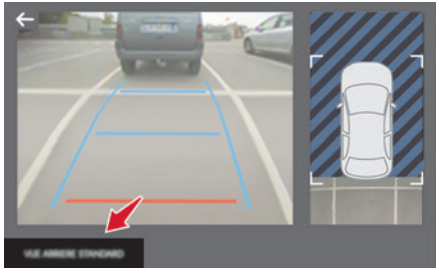
The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Various contextual views may be displayed:
– Standard view.
– 180° view.
– Zoom view.
AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom).
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



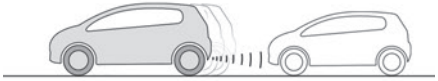
Using the rear camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

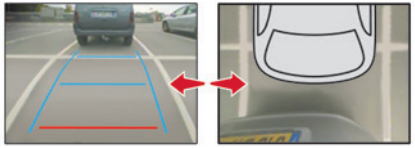
Rear view



To activate the camera located on the tailgate, engage reverse gear and do not exceed a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is deactivated:
– Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
– Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
– Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

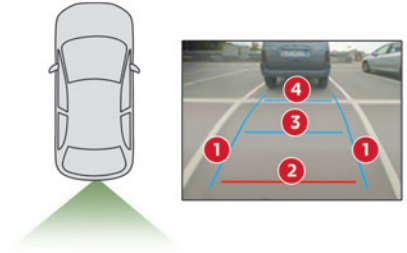
AUTO mode





This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

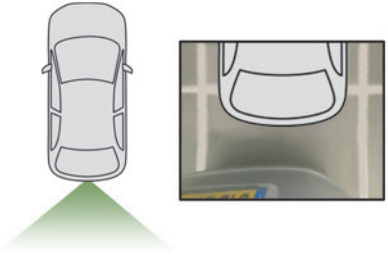
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

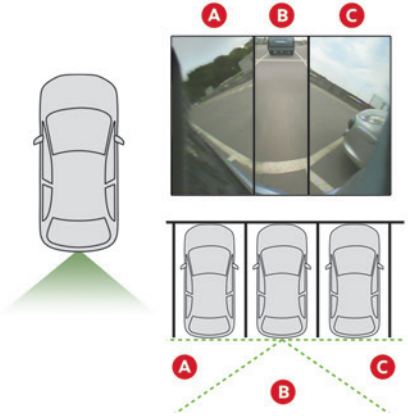
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

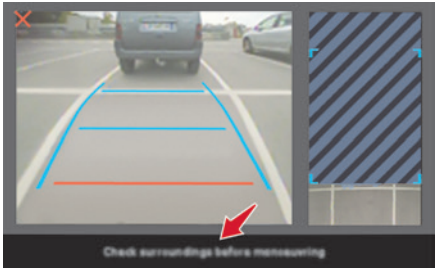
180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is only available via the view selection menu.

Quick start mode



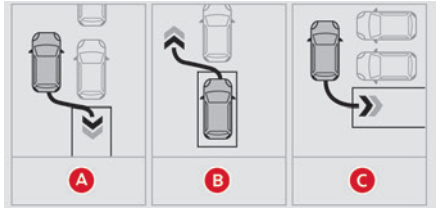
This mode displays, as quickly as possible, the contextual view (left-hand part) and the overhead view of the vehicle.
A message is displayed advising you to check your vehicle's surroundings before starting the manoeuvre.

Park Assist

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in the space while the driver controls the driving direction, gear changes, acceleration and braking.

To help the driver monitor the manoeuvre, the system automatically triggers the display from the Top Rear Vision function and activates the parking sensors.
The system measures the available parking spaces and calculates the distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:
A. Entering a "parallel" parking space
B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space
C. Entering a "bay" parking space

Operation

► When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

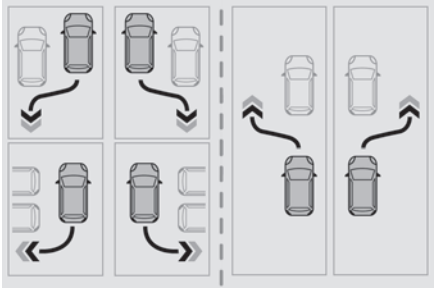
Activating the function

The function is activated in the **Vehicle/ Driving** touch screen menu.
Select "**Park Assist**".

! Activating the function deactivates the Blind spot monitoring system.

i You can deactivate the function at any time until the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre begins, by pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



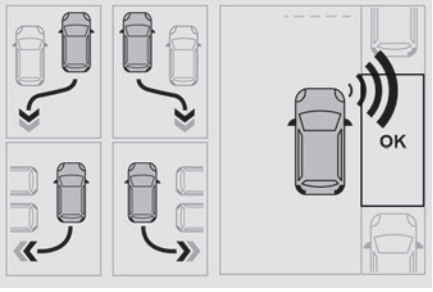
A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.
► Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.
The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even while searching for an available space.

Parking space search

► You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.
The parking space search stops over this limit.
The function automatically deactivates once the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.



When the system finds an available space, "**OK**" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

► Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "**Stop the vehicle**", accompanied by the "**STOP**" sign and an audible signal.
Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.
► To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instructions.
The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the message "**Manoeuvre under way**", accompanied by an audible signal.
Reversing is indicated by this message: "**Release the steering wheel, reverse**".
The Top Rear Vision function and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor your vehicle's close surroundings during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system controls the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting "parallel" entry and exit parking manoeuvres, and for all "bay" entry manoeuvres.
These instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:


"Reverse".


"Go forwards".

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress (green).



Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must resume control of the vehicle).

The maximum speeds during manoeuvres are indicated by these symbols:



5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.



3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any objects that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.). Risk of injury!
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor the traffic, especially vehicles coming towards you.
The driver should check that no objects or people are obstructing the vehicle's path.

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the terrain.
In shady areas, or in inadequate sunlight or lighting conditions, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The manoeuvre can be permanently interrupted at any time, either by the driver or automatically by the system.
Interruption by the driver:
– taking over control of the steering.
– activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
– unfastening the driver's seat belt.
– switching off the ignition.
Interruption by the system:
– vehicle exceeding the speed limit of 5 mph (7 km/h) during parking space entry manoeuvres, or 3 mph (5 km/h) during parking space exit manoeuvres.
– activation of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
– opening of a door or the boot.
– engine stall.
– system malfunction.
– after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.
Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.

The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre cancelled**" message on the touch screen.
A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.
When entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

– The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered, because the width of the lane is insufficient.
– The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp bend.
– The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
– If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
– Alongside a soft shoulder (e.g. ditch) or quay or on the edge of a drop.
– When the road surface is slippery (e.g. ice).

If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– If a tyre is under-inflated.
– If one of the bumpers is damaged.
– If one of the cameras is faulty.

If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the function:
– When carrying an object extending beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
– With a non-approved towball in place.
– With snow chains fitted.
– When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
– When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.

– After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection).
– If the sensors have been repainted other than by the CITROËN dealer network.
– With sensors not approved for the vehicle.

Malfunctions



If the parking sensor malfunction occurs during use, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, it causes the function to deactivate.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.

You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN prefers TOTAL



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

For more than 50 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted for engines in CITROËN vehicles, making them ever more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products under extreme motorsport conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants when servicing your vehicle; they are your assurance of optimum engine life and performance.

Compatibility of fuels

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.

At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 45 litres.

Reserve level: approximately 5 litres.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, one of these warning lamps lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

When it first comes on, **about 5 litres** of fuel remain.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

i A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

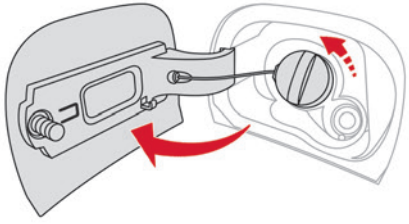
Refuelling

When refuelling, at least 5 litres must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

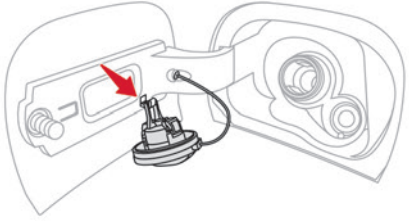
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is normal, caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

To refuel in complete safety:

► **Always switch off the engine.**



► With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear-central part of the filler flap to open it.
► Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
► Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support (on the filler flap).



► Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimise the risk of splashing).

Do not continue after the nozzle's third cut-out. Doing so may cause malfunctions.
► Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right.
► Close the fuel filler flap.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.
The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

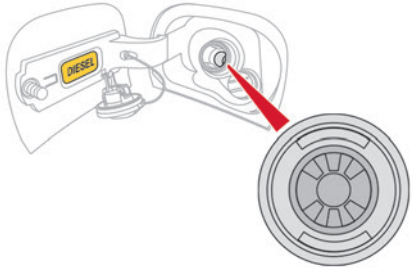
Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)
This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device is visible when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i The misfuel prevention device does not prevent filling with a jerrycan, regardless of the fuel type.

i **Travelling abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a CITROËN dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain types
195/65 R15	Maximum 9 mm link
195/60 R16	
205/60 R16	Cannot be fitted with chains
215/50 R17	

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

► To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.

► Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.

► Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

► Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).

► Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

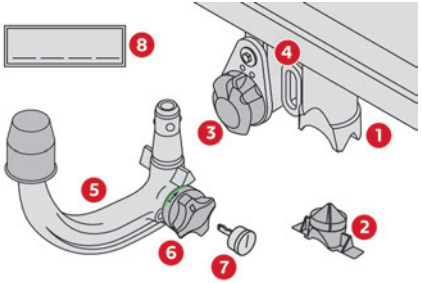
i It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

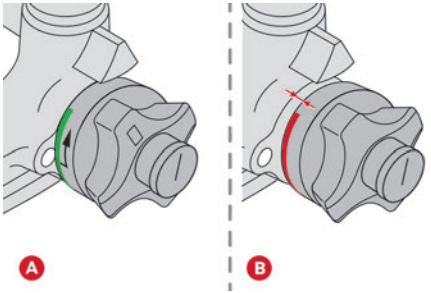
Towing device with quickly detachable towball

Presentation

No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.



1. Carrier
2. Protective plug
3. Connection socket
4. Safety eye
5. Detachable towball
6. Locking/unlocking wheel
7. Security key lock
8. Label to note the key references



A. **Locked** position (**green** mark opposite the **white** mark); the wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).
B. **Unlocked** position (**red** mark opposite the **white** mark); the wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

i Affix the enclosed label in a clearly visible location, close to the carrier or in the boot.

! Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

i To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

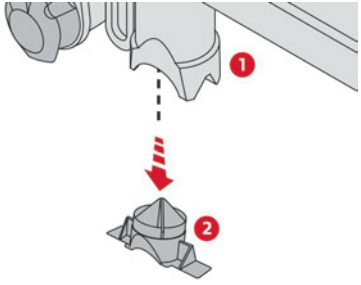
! **Before each use**
Verify that the towball is correctly fitted, checking the follow points:
– The green mark on the wheel is aligned with the white mark on the towball.
– The wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**).
– The security key lock is closed and the key removed; the wheel can no longer be operated.
– The towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by attempting to shake it with your hand.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer can become detached - risk of an accident!

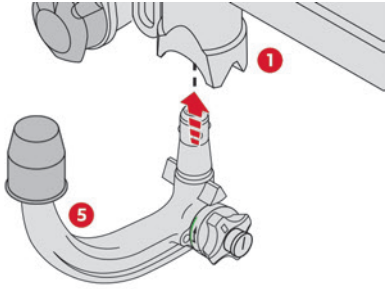
! **During use**
Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle - the Gross Train Weight or GTW.
Always comply with the maximum authorised load on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may become detached from the vehicle - risk of an accident!
Before driving, check the headlamp height adjustment and check that the lamps on the trailer operate correctly.
For more information on **Headlamp height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **After use**
When travelling without a trailer or load carrier, remove the towball and fit the protective plug into the carrier, to provide clear visibility of the number plate and/or its lighting.

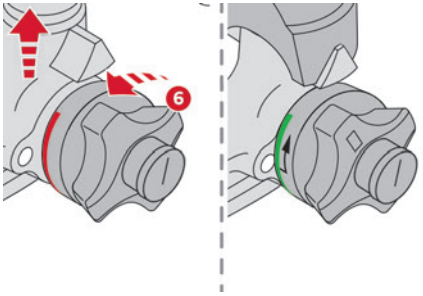
Fitting the towball



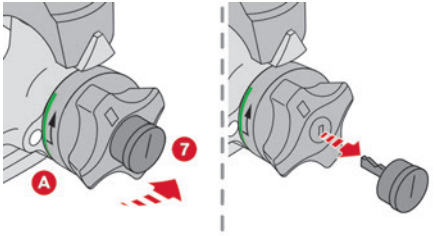
► Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug **2** from the carrier **1**.



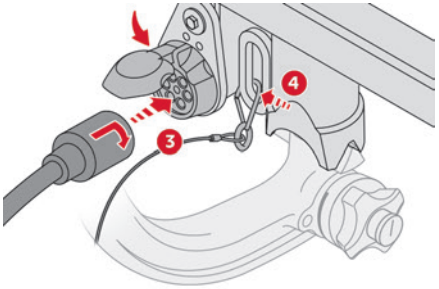
► Insert the end of the towball **5** into the carrier **1** and push it upwards; it will lock into position automatically.



► The wheel **6** rotates a quarter turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!

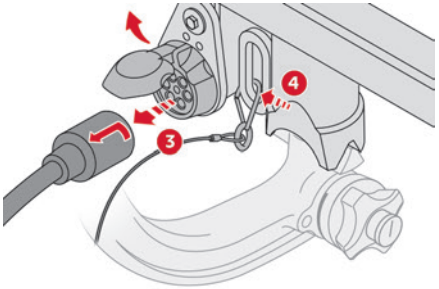


► Check that the mechanism has correctly locked into place and that the green mark on the wheel is aligned with the white mark on the towball (position **A**).
► Close the lock **7** using the key.
► Remove the key. The key cannot be removed while the lock is open.
► Clip the cap onto the lock.

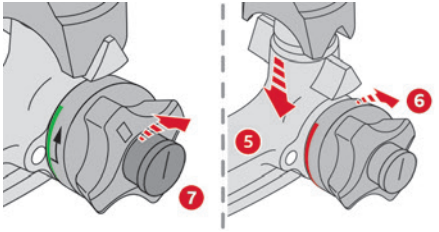


► Remove the protective cover from the towball.
► Attach the trailer to the towball.
► Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
► Tilt the connection socket **3** to put it in position.
► Insert the trailer plug and rotate it by a quarter turn to connect it to the connection socket **3** on the carrier.

Removing the towball

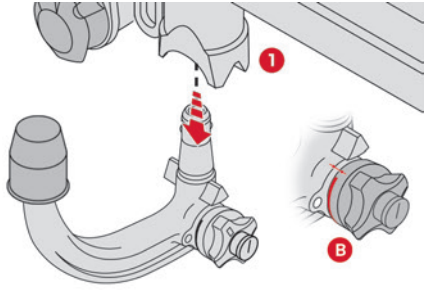


► Grasp the trailer's plug, perform a quarter turn and pull to disconnect it from the connection socket **3** on the carrier.
► Tilt the connection socket **3** to the left to stow it away.
► Detach the trailer's safety cable from the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
► Unhitch the trailer from the towball.
► Replace the protective cover over the towball.

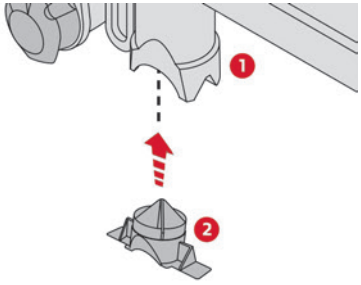


► Remove the cap from the lock.
► Insert the key into the lock **7**.

► Open the lock using the key.
► Hold the towball **5** firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn the wheel **6** fully in a clockwise direction until it stops; do not release the wheel.



► Extract the towball from the base of its carrier **1**.
► Release the wheel; it automatically locks in the unlocked position and the red mark on the wheel is in line with the white mark on the towball (position **B**).



► Replace the protective plug **2** into the carrier **1**.
► Stow the towball in its bag to protect it from knocks and dirt.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

Work on the towing device
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing device

Load distribution
► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.
Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN. We recommend having them fitted by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.
For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):
– Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.

– Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.
When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

i If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

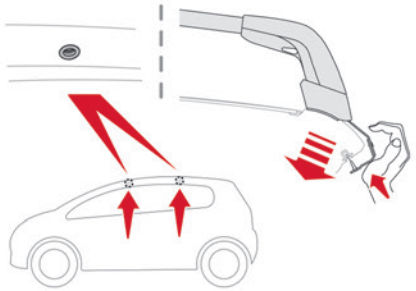
These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
– For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
– For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Roof bars

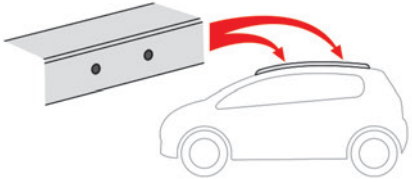
! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Fitting directly to the roof



You must only attach the transverse bars to the four fixing points located on the roof frame.
These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.
The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each fixing point.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the markings located on the longitudinal bars.

Sunroof
Check that the load does not pass below the roof bars so that it does not impede the movements of the sunroof - risk of major damage!

Recommendations
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Maximum load distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm:
– without longitudinal bars: **50 kg**.
– with longitudinal bars: **45 kg**.
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Bonnet

Stop & Start
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

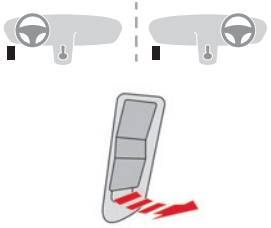


The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

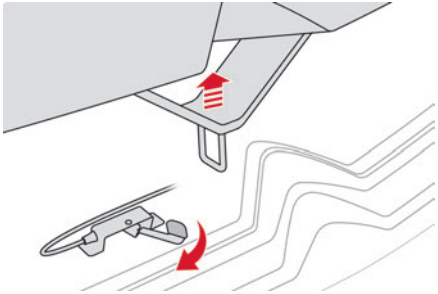
Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening

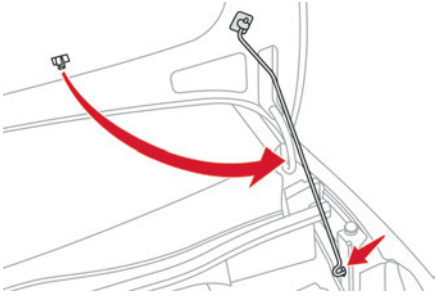


► Open the left-hand front door.

► Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



► Tilt the safety catch to the left and raise the bonnet.



► Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

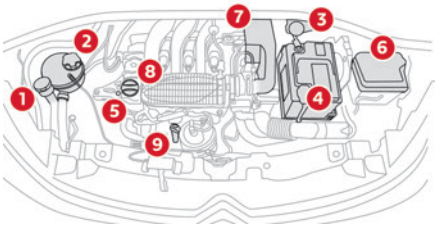
► Hold the bonnet and pull out the stay from the support slot.
► Clip the stay in its housing.
► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
► Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

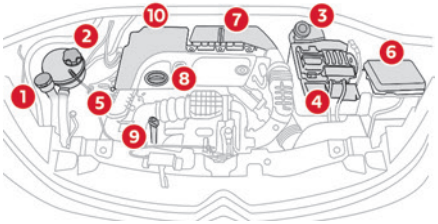
Engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:
– Air filter.
– Engine oil dipstick.
– Engine oil filler cap.
– Priming pump.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

10. Priming pump*

Diesel fuel system
This system is under very high pressure. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

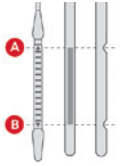
Engine oil

The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.
► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
► Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



► Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A** (max) and **B (min).**
Do not start the engine if the level is:
– above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Oil grade
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule

* Depending on engine.

supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

► Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

► Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

► Top up the level if necessary.

► After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, this warning lamp comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

Topping up

The topping up of this additive must be carried out quickly.

Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.
To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.
For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery


The battery does not require any maintenance.
Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter


Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter


Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Oil filter


Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)


The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

i If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

i **New vehicle**
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox


The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

i After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake

If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.
This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres

The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.
The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

! Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tyres as soon as possible.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Always mark the direction of rotation on the tyres that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tyres. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.
Winter or 4-seasons tyres can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that combines SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.
The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.
Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 3,900 miles (6,500 km), **which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style.
An alert system is triggered once the reserve level is reached: it is then possible to drive for a

further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle is immobilised.
If the estimated distance travelled by the vehicle between two services is greater than 12,500 miles (20,000 km), it will be necessary to top up the AdBlue.

For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a device required by law prevents the engine from being restarted.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard and the vehicle starts polluting the environment.
In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. After 685 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting.
In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is stopped.

Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

For the correct operation of the SCR system:
– Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
– Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
– Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, as well as service stations equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area

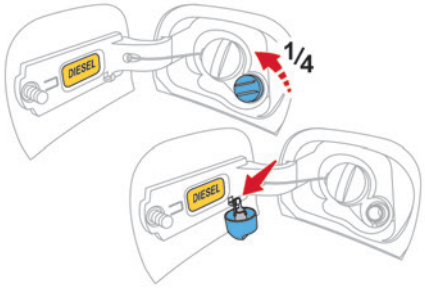
for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never pour the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, inserting the key into the ignition switch, or bringing the key for the "Keyless Entry and Start" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
or
► With Keyless Entry and Start, press the "**START/STOP**" button to switch off the engine.



► With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

Filling up

► With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.
► With an AdBlue® pump: insert the nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle automatically cuts out.

! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
– Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
– Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.
The system only registers AdBlue® top-ups of 5 litres or more.

! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "**Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**" – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

► Perform the same sequence of operations in reverse order.

Do not dispose of AdBlue® containers in the household waste.
Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you purchased them.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

i When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version,

move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

! When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

! Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

i Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

! Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

i Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
Before starting to prime the system, it is essential to put at least 5 litres of Diesel into the fuel tank.

For more information on **Refuelling** and on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

For non-BlueHDi versions, the fuel system components are located in the engine compartment; this may be under a removable cover.

For more information on the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, refer to the corresponding section.

BlueHDi engines

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine. If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Non-BlueHDi engines

► Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.

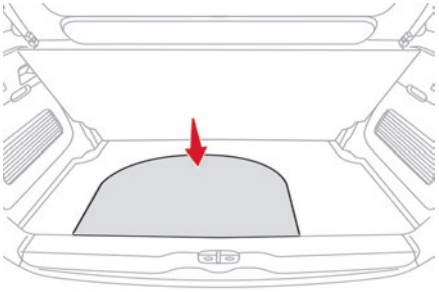
► Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (resistance may be felt at the first press).
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
► If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.
► Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

Tool kit

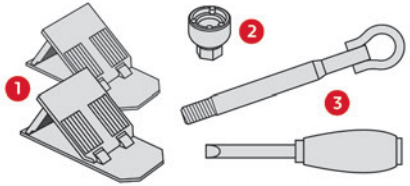
Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:
– Temporary puncture repair kit.
– Spare wheel.

Accessing the tools

Depending on version, the tool kit is stored in a bag or in a storage box in the boot.



List of tools

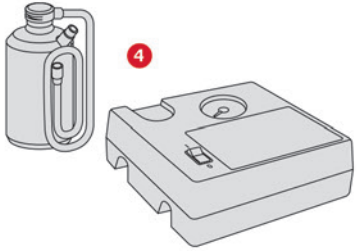


1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)
2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box or in the tool box) (depending on country of sale)
   To adapt the wheelbrace to the special ‘security’ bolts.

3. Removable towing eye and flat blade screwdriver
   The flat blade screwdriver allows the cover plate on the front or rear bumper to be opened to screw in the removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

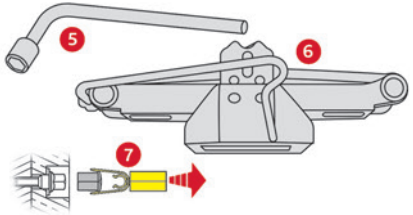
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker
   For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace
   For removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle
   To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (stored in the glove box, tool bag or tool box) (depending on equipment)
   For removing the wheel trim from steel wheels or the central bolt cover from alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purpose.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.

If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Temporary puncture repair kit

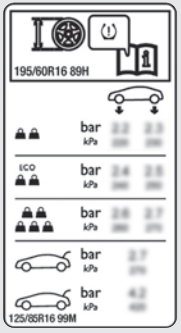
i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

! Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

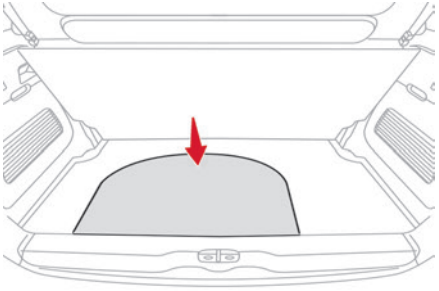
Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.

For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.



For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to the kit

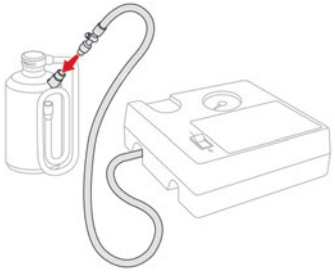


This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

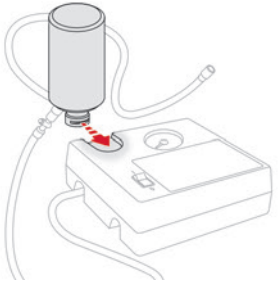
Repair procedure

Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.

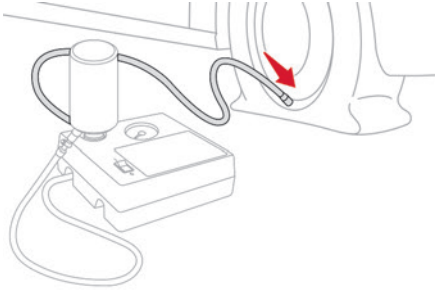
► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
► Switch the ignition off.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



► Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.



► Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
► Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



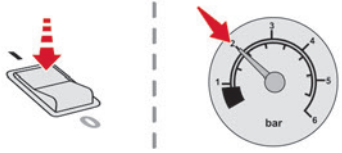
► Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



► Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

► Switch the ignition on.



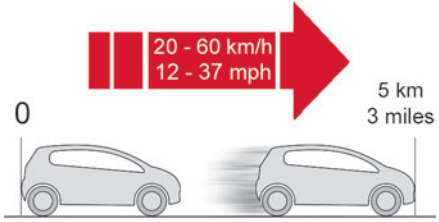
► Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Move the switch to position "**O**".
► Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Remove the kit.
► Refit the cap on the valve.
► Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



► Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
► Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 50 miles (80 km).
You must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

► Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
► Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Switch the ignition on.
► Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
► Remove the kit and stow it.
► Refit the cap on the valve.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

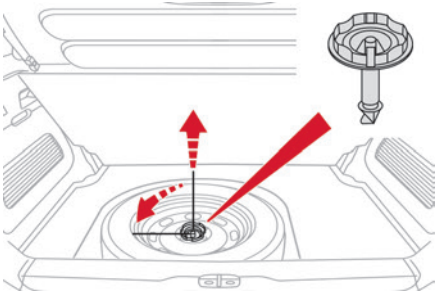
i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Accessing the spare wheel

The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.
To access the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.

i Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel or 'space-saver' wheel.

Removing the spare wheel



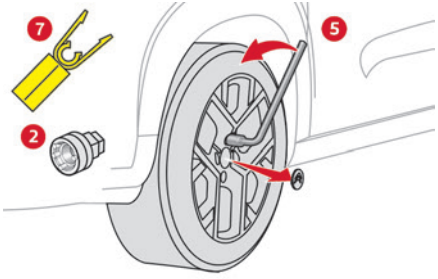
► Unclip and remove the tool storage box or remove the polystyrene cover (depending on version).
► Slacken the central nut.
► Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
► Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
► Take the wheel out of the boot.

Removing a wheel

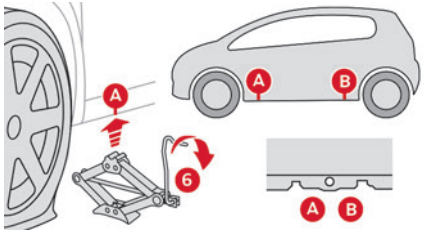
! **Parking the vehicle**
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
Check that the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel are on fixed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

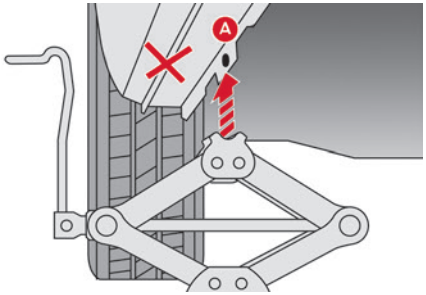
Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



– If the vehicle has steel wheels, remove the wheel trim.
– If the vehicle has alloy wheels, remove the central bolt cover using tool **7**.
– If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **2** to wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
– Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

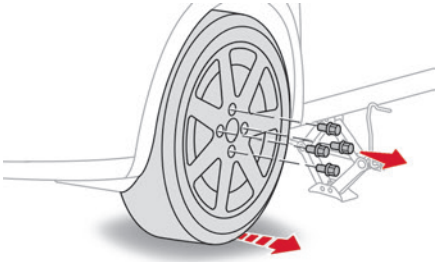


► Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



► Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
► Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!

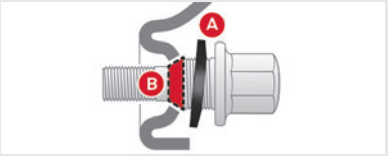


► Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
► Remove the wheel.

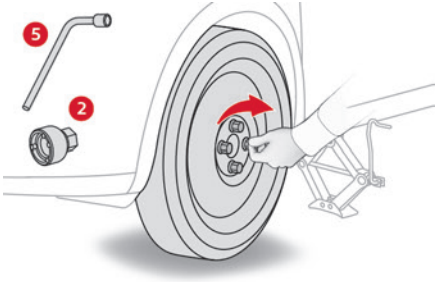
Stowing the damaged wheel
► To stow an **alloy wheel**, first remove the wheel trim from the centre of the wheel so that the fastening device (nut and bolt) can be put in place.
► In the case of a **"space saver" type spare wheel**, the damaged wheel cannot be stowed under the floor. It must be placed in the boot; use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.

Fitting a wheel

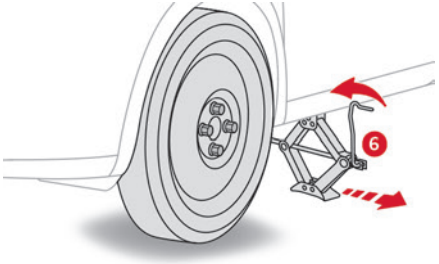
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel



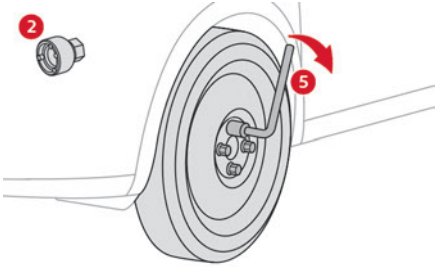
If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.



► Fit the wheel on the hub.
► Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
► Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
► Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



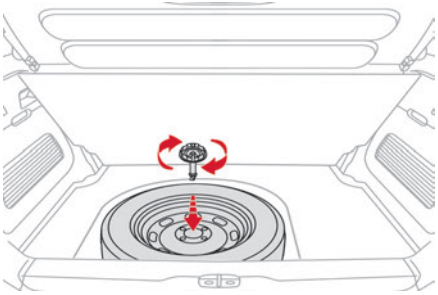
► Lower the vehicle again fully.
► Fold jack **6** and remove it.



► Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
► Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
► Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
► Store the tools.

Putting the spare wheel back in place

! The punctured wheel cannot be put under the boot floor.



► Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
► Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
► Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
► Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
► Stow the tools in the bag or storage box (depending on equipment).

i If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

After changing a wheel

! **With a "space-saver" type spare wheel**



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one "space-saver" type spare wheel is prohibited.

! Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

Refitting the lamp units
Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

Opening the bonnet/Accessing the bulbs
Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

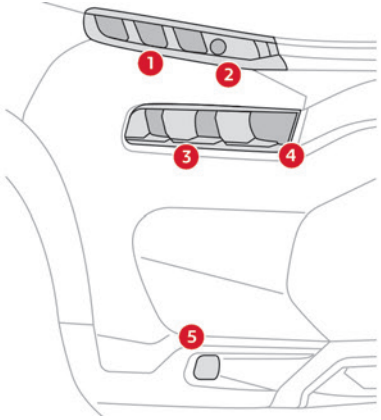
Halogen bulbs (Hx)
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:
– Front foglamps.
– Daytime running lamps/sidelamps.
– Dipped beam headlamps.
– Main beam headlamps.
– Direction indicator side repeaters.
– Third brake lamp.
– Number plate lamps.

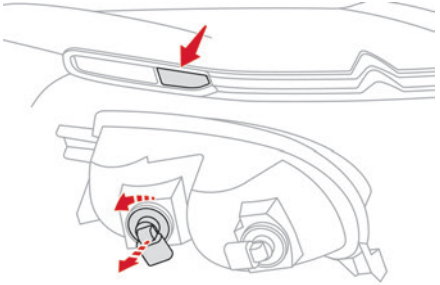
If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps or lamps - risk of electrocution!

Front lamps



1. Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps (LED)
2. Direction indicators (PY21W)
3. Dipped beam headlamps (LED)
4. Main beam headlamps (LED)
5. Foglamps (LED)

Direction indicators

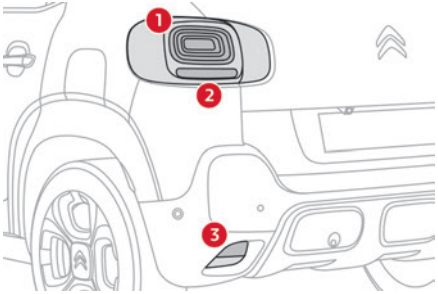


Rapid flashing of the indicator lamp for a direction indicator (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

► Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

Amber-coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

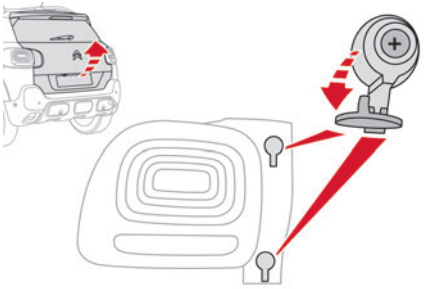
Rear lamps



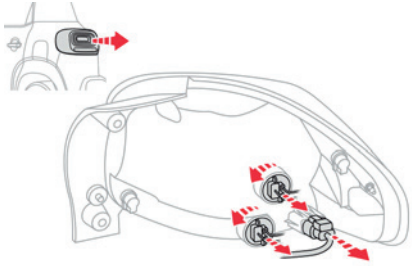
1. Brake lamps / Sidelamps (W21/5W)
2. Direction indicators (WY21W)
3. Reversing lamp or foglamp (P21W)

Replacing lamp units

These bulbs are changed from outside the boot.



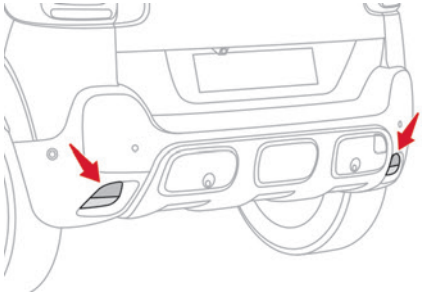
► Identify the defective bulb then open the boot.
► Using a thin, flat blade screwdriver, unclip the two plastic covers, then flip them down.
► Unscrew the two fixing screws located in the openings.



► Unclip the lamp unit and carefully extract it pulling straight towards the outside.
► Hold the lamp unit and disconnect the connector.
► Turn the bulb holder of the faulty bulb a quarter turn anti-clockwise and pull it out.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

i Make sure to engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle.
Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp unit.

Reversing lamps and foglamp



Replacing bulbs
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior lighting

Courtesy lamps (W5W)



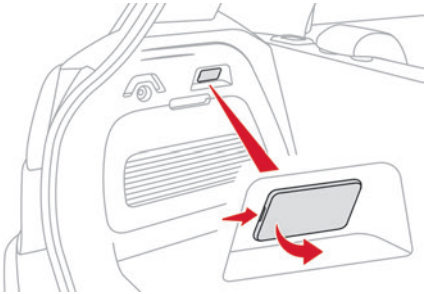
► Using a thin, flat blade screwdriver, unclip the entire console surrounding the courtesy lamp.
► Remove the defective bulb and replace it.

► Fit the console back into place around the courtesy lamp and clip it correctly.



► Using a thin, flat blade screwdriver, unclip the courtesy lamp.
► Remove the defective bulb and replace it.
► Fit the courtesy lamp back into place and clip it correctly.

Boot (W5W)



► Unclip the cover using a small flat blade screwdriver.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.
► Put the unit back in place.

Fuses

Changing a fuse
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Installing electrical accessories
The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery.

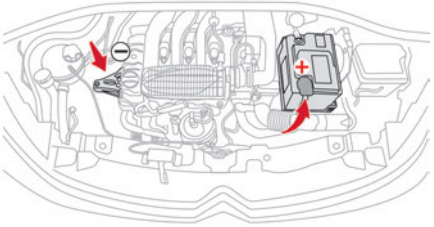
Lead-acid starter batteries

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



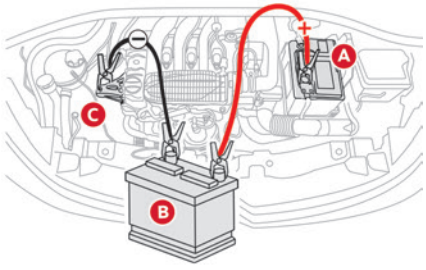
For access to the (+) terminal:

► Release the bonnet by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
► Raise the bonnet.
(+) Positive terminal.
This terminal has a quick-release clamp.
(-) Negative terminal.
As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, use the engine mounting.

Starting using another battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
► Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
► Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

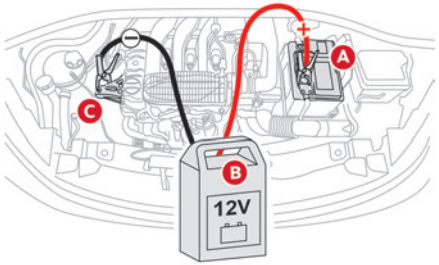
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

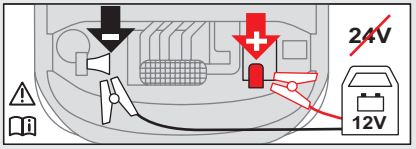
► Switch the ignition off.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

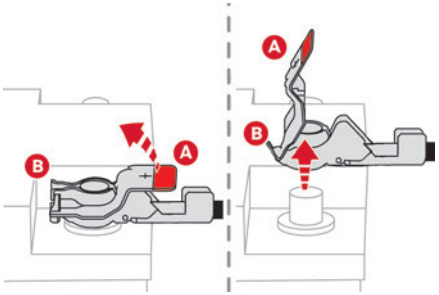
Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.

Before disconnecting the battery:
► Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
► Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
► Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.
After accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

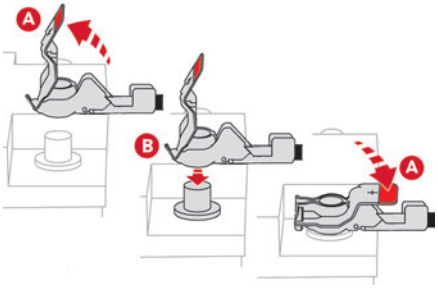
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



► Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
► Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
► Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise lever **A** fully.
► Refit open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
► Push clamp **B** fully down.
► Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
► Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

! Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

i For right-hand drive versions, when the total distance recorder has reached 37 miles (60 km), you must wait approximately 15 minutes before starting the engine.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
– Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
– Sunroof and electric blind.
– Electric windows.
– Date and time.
– Preset radio stations.

i After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

i **General recommendations**
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.

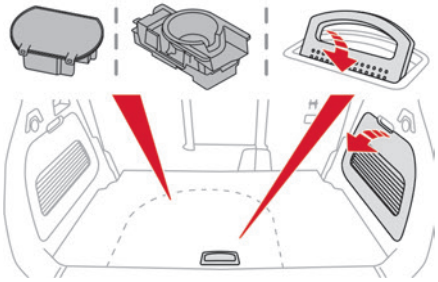
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:
– broken down on a motorway or main road;
– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/Manual	☑	☑	☑	☑
Internal combustion/Automatic	☒	☑	☑	☒

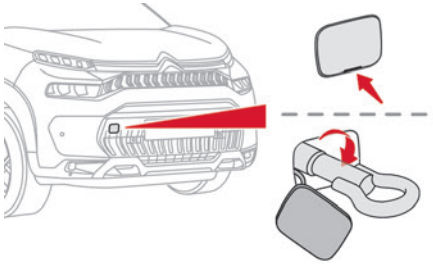
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Accessing the tools



The tools are located in the boot. Depending on version, they are stored under the floor or behind the removable grille of the right-hand compartment.
For access:
► Open the boot.
► Then, depending on version, lift up the floor using the handle, remove it and remove the mat.
► Or open the removable grille on the right by pulling from the top.
For more information on the list of tools, refer to the **Tool kit** section.

Towing your vehicle

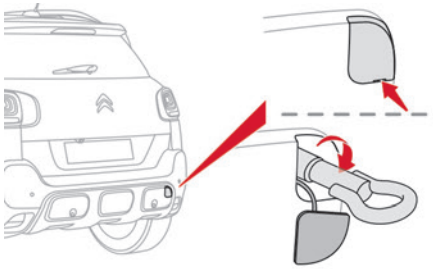


► On the front bumper, unclip the cover from below using the flat blade screwdriver.
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
► With an automatic gearbox, move the gear selector into position **N**.

! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

► Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



► On the rear bumper, unclip the cover from below using the flat blade screwdriver.
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the vehicle being towed.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

! If the vehicle is equipped with a BlueHDi 120 S&S EAT6 engine and a sunroof or spare wheel, it is forbidden to tow another vehicle.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Engines and towed loads - PETROL

Engine	PureTech 82		PureTech 110	
Gearbox	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)**	**Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)**
Code	**EB2FMA (Euro 4)**	**EB2F MB5 (Euro 6.1)**	**EB2DTM AT6III (Euro 4)**	**EB2DTM AT6III (Euro 5)**
Model codes: 2R...	**HMZE**	**HMZB**	**HNVZ**	**HNVV**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	60	60	81	81
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	650	650	840	840
Unbraked trailer (kg)	560	560	620	620
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	65	65	65	65

Engine	PureTech 110 S&S	PureTech 110	PureTech 130 S&S
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed (BVM6)**	**Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)**	**Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)**
Code	**EB2ADT MB6 (Euro 6.3)**	**EB2DTM AT6III (Euro 6.1)**	**EB2ADTS (Euro 6.3)**
Model codes: 2R...	**HNPM**	**HNVW**	**HNS1**
Cubic capacity (cm^3)	1,199	1,199	1,199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	81	81	96
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	880	840	840
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	620	620
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	65	65	65

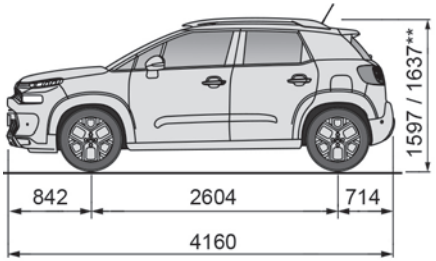
Engines and towed loads - DIESEL

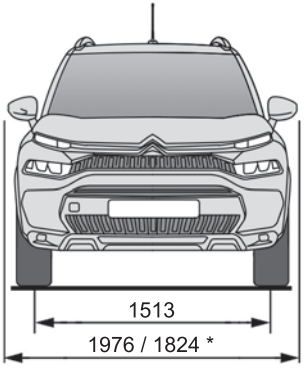
Engine	HDi 92		BlueHDi 110 S&S	BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearbox	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 5-speed (BVM5)**	**Manual 6-speed (BVM6)**	**Automatic 6-speed (EAT6)**
Code	**DV6D BE (Euro 4)**	**DV6D BE (Euro 5)**	**DV5RCe MB6 STT (Euro 6.3)**	**DV5RCD AT6III STT (Euro 6.3)**
Model codes: 2C...	**9HPA**	**9HPE**	**YHSM**	**YHX1**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,560	1,560	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	68	68	81	88
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% slope (kg)	840	840	880	880/0*
Unbraked trailer (kg)	610	610	620	650/0*
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	65	65	65	55

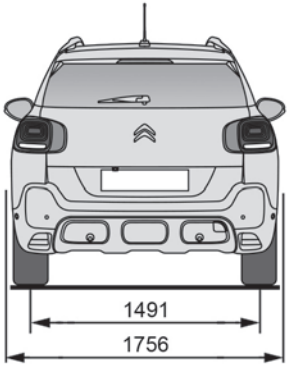
* Vehicle with sunroof or spare wheel.

Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



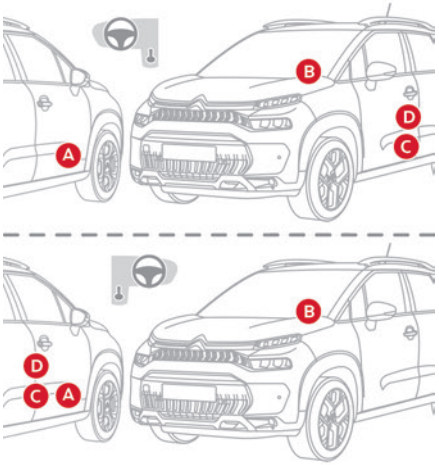




* Mirrors folded in.
** Version with longitudinal bars.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the right-hand front seat floor.
Stamped on the chassis.
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer’s name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).

– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.

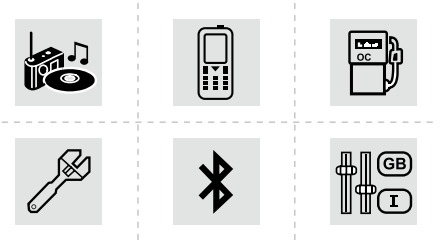
D. Tyres label.

Affixed to the driver's door.

Bears the following information about the tyres:
– Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
– Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– Spare tyre inflation pressure.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres). In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a CITROËN dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Bluetooth® audio system



The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps

Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC / Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).

Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activate/Deactivate automatic volume adjustment (based on the vehicle's speed).

LIST **Radio :**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media :
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Select the screen display mode, between: Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK Confirm or display contextual menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6.

Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

◀◀ ▶▶ **Radio:**
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

▲ ▼ **Radio:**
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Cancel the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU Access the main menu.

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC / **Other than telephone call:**
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2



MENU Access to the main menu.

\+ Increase volume.

Mute / Restore the sound.

− Decrease volume.

SRC / **Other than telephone call:**
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.

"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.


"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.


"**Trip computer**".


"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.


"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.


"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

▲ ▼ Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

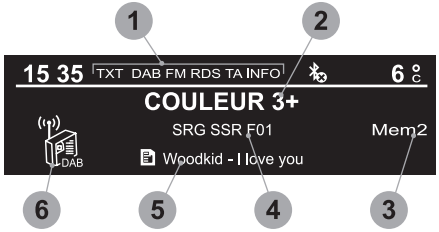
OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display showing the name of the current station.

3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.

4 Display showing the name of the “multiplex” service being used.

5 RadioText (TXT) display for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

When changing region, updating the list of preset radio stations is recommended.



LIST Full list of radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex / ensemble” services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex / ensemble".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex / ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen , press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB / FM station tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

MENU — Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ — Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

▲ ▼ — Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
– **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
– **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
– **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
– **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK — Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ — Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

OK — Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀◀ ▶▶ — Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.

▲ ▼ — Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST — Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

Select by **"Folder"** / **"Artist"** / **"Genre"** / **"Playlist"**.
Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.

Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list.
Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next **"Folder"** / **"Artist"** / **"Genre"** / **"Playlist"*** in the list.

Input AUX socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

i Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **"AUX"**.
First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Controls are managed via the portable device.

! Do not connect the same device to both the auxiliary jack socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

! External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **"CD"**.

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **"CD"**.

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.
Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).
Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE.**
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.
If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.
The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with “.mp3”, “.wma”, “.wav” and “.aac” file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
No other file types (“.mp”4, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.
Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3”, “.wma”, “.wav”, “.cbr”, “.vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (“.mp4”, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.
File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.
In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU — Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK — Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK — Confirm with **OK.**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.
In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU — Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ — Select "**Connections**".

OK — Press **OK** to confirm.

▲ ▼ — Select "Bluetooth **Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

OK — Press **OK** to confirm.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
– 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
– 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates connection of the hands-free telephone profile.

▲ ▼ — Select a telephone.

OK — Press **OK** to confirm.

▲ ▼ — Then select and confirm:

– "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**" : to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
– "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**" : to connect / disconnect streaming only.
– "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**" : to

connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
– "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

i When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.
Select "**Call**".
Select "**Dial**".
Or
Select "**Directory**".
Or
Select "**Calls list**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.
Select "**End call**".
Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

i The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
– select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
– deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Telephone mode

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
– select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
– deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Consultation call

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Directory

▲ ▼ To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.

Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

– "**Consult an entry**",
– "**Delete an entry**",
– "**Delete all entries**".

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

i Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to avoid discharging the vehicle's battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The message "the audio system is overheated" is displayed onscreen.

To protect the installation if the ambient temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode, in which the volume may be decreased or the CD player stopped.

► Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).

For optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adjusted to different audio sources, resulting in audible differences when switching between sources (radio, CD, etc.).

► Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are appropriate to the sources being listened to. We recommend setting the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re

balance and Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in CD mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The wrong waveband is selected.

► Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.

Traffic announcement (TA) is shown but I receive no traffic information.

The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.

► Tune to a radio station that broadcasts traffic information.

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are inoperative (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the RDS function to allow the system to check for a more powerful transmitter in the area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The sound intermittently cuts out for 1 or 2 seconds in radio mode.

During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.

► Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon occurs too frequently and always on the same route.

Media

The Bluetooth connection is cut.

The battery in the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.

► Charge the battery in the peripheral device.

The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.

The USB stick has not been recognised, or may be corrupted.

► Reformat the USB memory stick.

The CD is systematically ejected or is not played.

The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system.

The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.

► Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.

► Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.

► Check the content in the case of a burned CD: read the recommendations in the "Audio" section.

Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.

The CD audio quality is is poor.

The CD is scratched or of poor quality.

► Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.

The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.

► Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.

I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.

Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.

► Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

I am unable to access my voicemail.

Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.

► Call your voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.

I am unable to access my directory of contacts.

► Check the compatibility of your telephone.

You did not grant access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.

► Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.

I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.

Handset mode is activated.

► Deselect handset mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.

I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.

Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specificities in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.

► Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the telephone pairing from the system **and** the system pairing from the telephone, in order to view the compatibility of the telephones.

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

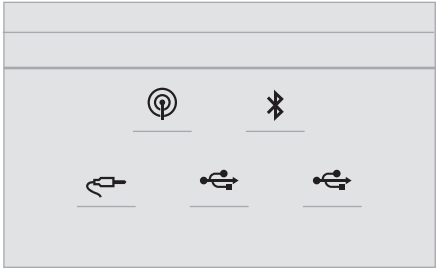
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" and "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All touch-sensitive areas on the screen are white.
On pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page or by swiping the pages to the left or right with your finger.
Press in the shaded area to go back up a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
– Privacy status information.
– Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB Memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

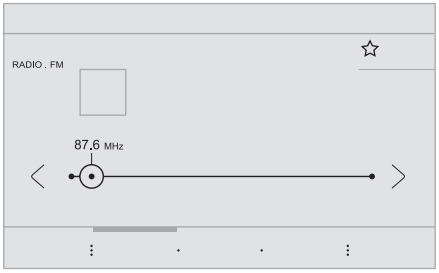
Menus

Applications



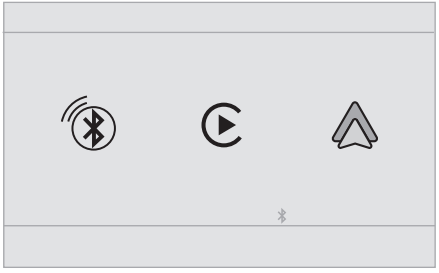
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



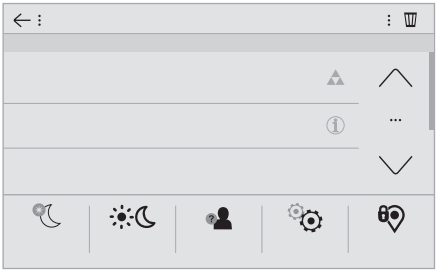
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



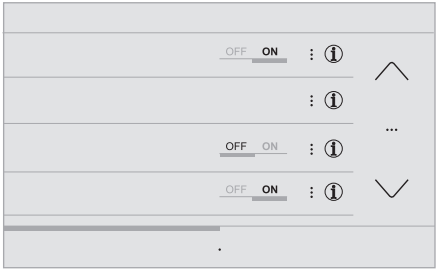
Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®. Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings



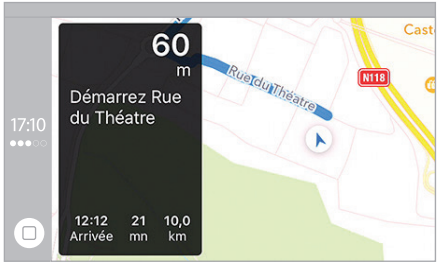
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving



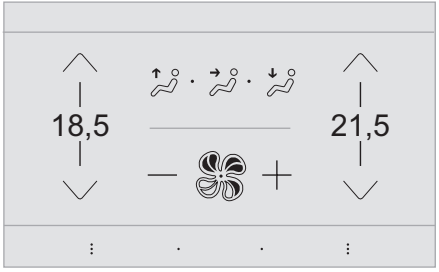
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Band**" to change waveband.
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.
Or
Select a radio station or frequency.
Press "**Preset**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**News**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**TA**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Audio settings**".


Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.


Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.


Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".


Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the country.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).


Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.


Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".


Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port


Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**SOURCES**" button.
Select the source.

Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

i Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.


Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.


From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or


If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.


Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.


From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.


Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.


The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.


On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®


Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.


From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.


Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.


During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.


When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®


From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),

– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),

– "**Mobile internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press the "Details" button for a paired device.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

+2s Make a long press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Parking the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

+2s Or press and hold the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

+2s Press and hold the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format for the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the Google Android Auto or Apple website to see which countries are supported.

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, turn down ventilation, slow down, etc.).

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options.

Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

AM and DAB radio are not available on Hybrid vehicles.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available there.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

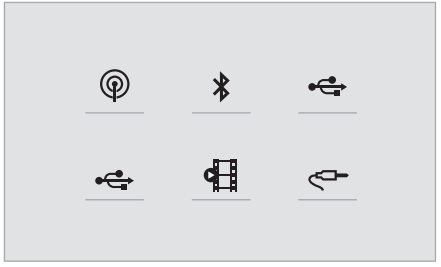
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).

– Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
– Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
– Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice commands from smartphone or CarPlay®, Android Auto via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

Menus

Connected navigation



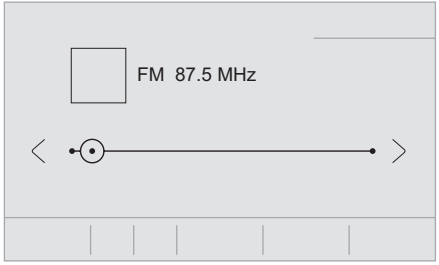
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications



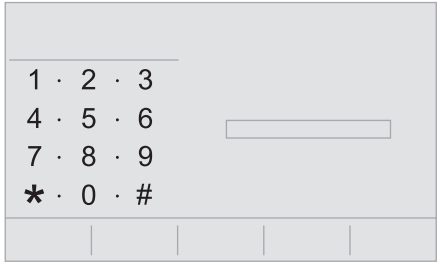
Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.
Check the status of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



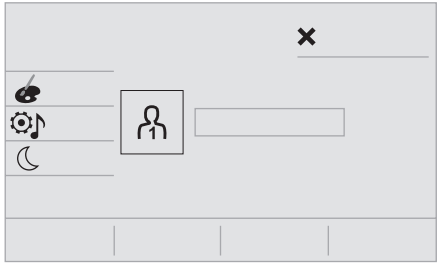
Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



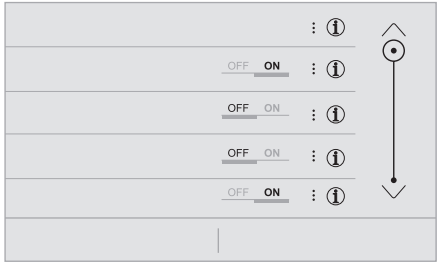
Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



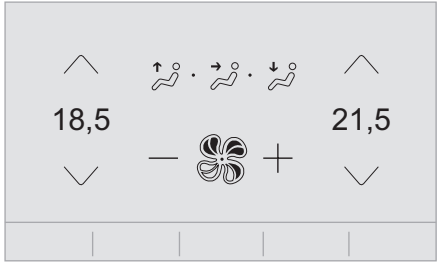
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
– always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
– for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
– before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps

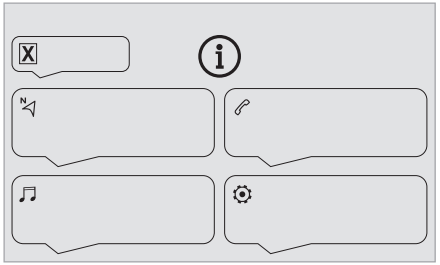
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller"

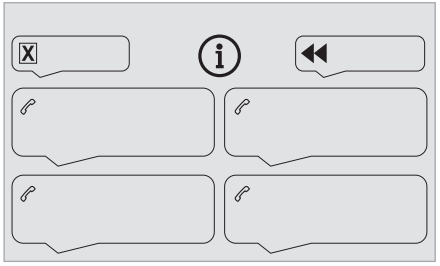
! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by

step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands



Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert
Select user 1 / Select profile John
Increase temperature
Decrease temperature



Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands



Voice commands

Navigate home
Navigate to work
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club
Navigate to contact, John Miller
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London



Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance
Tell me the remaining time
Tell me the arrival time
Stop route guidance



Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".



Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination
Show nearby POI petrol station
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route



Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands



Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...



Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".



Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2
Tune to 98.5 FM
Tune to preset number five



Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".



Voice commands

What's playing?



Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude
Play artist Madonna
Play album Thriller



Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.



Voice commands

Call David Miller*
Call voicemail*
Display calls*



Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.



Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late



Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me



Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*



Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press "**Search…**".



Enter an address or the key words for the destination.



Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

In order to be able to use the navigation, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), then enter the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or select

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

an address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

If you do not confirm the number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Then

Select the "**Country**".

Select the keyboard “language”.

Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**” tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**”.

OK

Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**” tab.

Select "**Home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**” tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**” tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:

You can only select this method of using the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use the Citroën Connect Box solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Search**".
Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change the "Database".
Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).
Press the back arrow to confirm.
Enter an address or the key words for the destination (POI).
Press "**OK**" to start the search.
Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.
Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Select the destination by pressing on the map.
Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.

A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.
Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.
Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.
A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.
Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.
OR
Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.
And
Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable

legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

With the Citroën Connect Box solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user



For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Brand's website in your country.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection

Connect the USB cable.

The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" network Wi-Fi and the "**Password**".

Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:

With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System configuration**".

Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR

Press "**Notifications**".

Press "**Private mode**".

THEN

Activate or deactivate:
– "**No data sharing except for company vehicles**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Sharing data and vehicle position**"

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Settings**".
Select the "**Map**" tab.
Activate or deactivate:
– "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
– "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".
These settings must be configured for each profile.
Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.
Select the "**Alerts**" tab.
Activate or deactivate:
– "**Advise of car park nearby**".
– "**Filling station alert**".
– "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure the alerts.
– "**Give an audible warning**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".
Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

The "Notifications", located in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
– Weather,
– Filling stations,
– Car park,
– Traffic,
– POI local search.
A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"

To send information about danger zones, select the option:**Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).
Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".
Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press this button to display the list of services.
Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**
Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".
Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".
Press this button to display a secondary page.
Select the "**Settings**" tab.
Select the desired fuel.
Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details


Press **Navigation** to display the main page.


Press this button to display the list of services.


Press **"POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**


Press one of the buttons to search for **"Stations"**.


Activate/deactivate **"Stations"**.


Press this button to display a secondary page.


Select the **"Settings"** tab.


Select the desired connector type.



Press **"OK"** to save.

Displaying weather information


Press **Navigation** to display the main page.


Press this button to display the list of services.


Select **"View map"**.


Select **"Weather"**.


Press this button to display basic information.


Press this button to display detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.

As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

Connectivity


Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"Connectivity"** to access the **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The **"CarPlay"** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.


Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.


Press **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or


Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.
Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".
The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.
Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.
Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.

Select the country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Bluetooth connection**".
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected smartphones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

Depending on the type of smartphone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".
Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.
Select a network.
Using the virtual keypad , enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".
Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.
Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".
Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.
And/or
Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Manage connection**".
With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press "**Frequency**".
Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.
Or
Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.
Or
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.
Press "**Frequency**".
Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)
Press "**Presets**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
To change the waveband, press "Band…", displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the

TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Select "**Announcements**".
Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press “Band …" at the top right of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

“DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, “FM-DAB auto follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".
Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".
OK Press "**OK**".

If “FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume.
When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on “FM” (“**FM-DAB**" option shaded), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment
Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/Depending on country.
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select **Video** to start the video.

To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.
The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press "**Bluetooth search**".
Or
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.
Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the connection profile:
Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
Press the "Details" button.
Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

+2s

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

+2s

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

+2s

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).

Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).

Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.
Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.
Press "**Call" to start the call.**
Press "**Play**" to listen to the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.
Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.
Press "**Create**" to write a new message.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.
Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Select "**Audio settings**".
Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".
Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) as well as for **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".

The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Setting of the profiles**".
Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".
Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.
Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.
Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.
OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.
OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.
Select "**Audio settings**".
Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".
OK Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Screen configuration**".
Select "**Animation**".
Activate or deactivate:**Automatic scrolling**
Select "**Brightness**".
Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.
Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**System settings**".
Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format for the date.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.

The address is not recognised.

► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search…" button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.

The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).

► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I am not receiving "Danger zone" alerts.

You have not subscribed to the online services option.

► If you have subscribed to the option:

- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.

The POIs have not been selected.

► Set the zoom level to 200 metres (656 ft), or select POIs from the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.

The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.

► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.

The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.

► Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (None, Manual or Automatic).

I am receiving a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.

As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.

► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.

► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).

In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.

This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.

On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.

Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.

This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

My navigation is no longer connected.

During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.

► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the radio station being listened to gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (e.g. no sound, "87.5" MHz is displayed).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or damaged (e.g. when going through a car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The surrounding area (e.g. hill, building, tunnel, underground car park, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press "Update list" in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.

The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.
This is perfectly normal.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► You can check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.
► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.
► Check the list of supported countries via these websites: Google Android Auto or Apple.
The volume of the telephone connected via Bluetooth is too low.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce ambient noise (e.g. close the windows, reduce ventilation, slow down).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.
The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.
► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system is not receiving SMS text messages.
Bluetooth mode does not allow SMS text messages to be sent to the system.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass, Treble, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The date and time cannot be set.

Date and time settings are only available if satellite synchronisation is deactivated.

► Settings menu/Options/Date-Time Setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:
– vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
– ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)

As a rule such data is transient and is not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Often control units include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.
Depending on technical equipment levels, the data stored is as follows:
– system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)
– faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
– system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
– information on events damaging the vehicle
– for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range
In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.
When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used where necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data read documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.
Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.
Depending on the equipment level in question, these include
– seat and steering wheel position settings
– chassis and air conditioning settings
– custom settings such as interior lighting
You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include
– multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
– address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
– input destinations
– data on the use of online services
This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.
This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.
Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent. You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question. The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

180° rear vision 116

A

ABS 67
Accessories 64
Active Safety Brake 106–108
AdBlue® 15, 133
AdBlue® tank 134
Additive, Diesel 131–132
Adjusting headlamps 59
Adjusting head restraints 36
Adjusting seat 36–37
Adjusting the air distribution 45
Adjusting the air flow 44–45
Adjusting the date 18–19, 23, 182, 204
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 41
Adjusting the seat angle 37
Adjusting the seat belt height 71
Adjusting the temperature 44–45
Adjusting the time 18–19, 23, 181, 205
Advice on care and maintenance 135
Advice on driving 7, 84–85
Airbags 73, 75, 77
Airbags, curtain 74–75
Airbags, front 74–75, 77
Airbags, lateral 74–75
Air conditioning 43–44
Air conditioning, automatic 44–45
Air conditioning, manual 44
Air intake 44–45
Air vents 42
Alarm 31–32
Android Auto connection 196
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 67
Antitheft / Immobiliser 25
Apple CarPlay connection 178, 195
Applications 196
Armrest, front 50
Armrest, rear 51
Assistance call 65
Assistance, emergency braking 67, 108
Audible warning 65
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 165, 177, 200

B

Battery, 12 V 127, 132, 147–149
Battery, charging 148–149
Battery, remote control 28
Blind 32–34
Blind spot sensors 111
Blinds, side 50
BlueHDi 15, 131, 137
Bluetooth (hands-free) 165–166, 179, 201
Bluetooth (telephone) 179–180, 201–202
Bodywork 136
Bonnet 128–129
Boot 30, 54
Brake discs 133
Brake lamps 146
Brakes 133
Braking assistance system 67
Braking, automatic emergency 106–108
Brightness 181
Bulbs 145
Bulbs (changing) 144–146

C

Cable, audio 199
Cable, Jack 199
Capacity, fuel tank 121–122
Cap, fuel filler 121–122
Care of the bodywork 136
CD 164
CD, MP3 164
Central locking 26, 30
Changing a bulb 144–146
Changing a fuse 147
Changing a wheel 137, 141
Changing a wiper blade 61–62
Changing the remote control battery 28
Charger, induction 48
Charger, wireless 48
Checking the engine oil level 15
Checking the levels 130–131
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 138, 141
Checks 129, 132–133
Checks, routine 132–133
Child lock 83

Children 72, 78–80
Children (safety) 83
Child seats 72, 75–76, 78
Child seats, conventional 78, 80, 82
Child seats, i-Size 80, 82
Child seats, ISOFIX 78–80, 82
Cleaning (advice) 135–136
Closing the boot 26, 30
Closing the doors 26, 29
Coat hanger 51
Coat hook 50
Collision Risk Alert 106–107
Configuration, vehicle 18–20
Connected applications 196
Connection, Bluetooth 166, 179–180, 196–197, 201–202
Connection, MirrorLink 178
Connection, Wi-Fi network 197
Connectivity 195
Container, AdBlue® 134
Control, electric windows 34–35
Control, emergency boot release 30
Control, emergency door 27
Control, heated seats 38
Control stalk, lighting 55–56
Control stalk, wipers 60–63
Courtesy lamp 146
Courtesy lamps 53–54
Cruise control 99, 101–102, 104–106
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 101–102
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 101–102
Cup holder 50

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 162–163, 176, 199
Date (setting) 18–19, 23, 182, 204
Daytime running lamps 57, 145
Deactivating the passenger airbag 74, 77
Deadlocking 25–26
Defrosting 41, 47
Defrosting, front 46
Demisting 41
Demisting, front 46
Demisting, rear 41, 47
Demisting, rear screen 41, 47
Dials and gauges 8
Dimensions 157
Dipstick 15, 130
Direction indicators 56, 145–146
Display, head-up 98–99
Doors 29
Driver's attention warning 109
Driving 84–85
Driving aids camera (warnings) 97
Driving aids (recommendations) 97
Driving economically 7
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 67–68

E

EBFD 67
Eco-driving (advice) 7
Economy mode 127
Electric windows 34
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 67
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 67
Emergency call 65
Emergency switching off 88–89
Emergency warning lamps 64
Emissions control system, SCR 16, 133
Energy economy mode 127
Engine compartment 129
Engine, Diesel 121, 129, 137, 156
Engine, petrol 129, 154
Engines 153–154, 156
Environment 7, 28
ESC (electronic stability control) 67
Exterior lighting 58

F

Fatigue detection 109
Filling the AdBlue® tank 131, 134
Filling the fuel tank 121–122
Filter, air 132
Filter, oil 132
Filter, particle 131–132
Filter, passenger compartment 43, 132
Fitting a wheel 141, 143

Fitting roof bars 127–128
Fittings, boot 52
Fittings, interior 47–48, 50
Fittings, rear 50
Flap, fuel filler 121–122
Flashing indicators 56, 145
Floor, boot, adjustable 52
Fluid, brake 131
Fluid, engine coolant 131
Foglamp, rear 55–56
Foglamps, front 55–56, 59–60, 145
Foglamps, rear 55
Folding the rear seats 38–40
Frequency (radio) 198
Fuel 7, 121
Fuel consumption 7
Fuel tank 121–122
Fuses 147

G

Gauge, fuel 121–122
Gearbox, automatic 90, 92–93, 133, 148
Gearbox, manual 89–90, 93, 132
Gear lever, manual gearbox 89–90
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 92
Glove box 48
G.P.S. 192
Grab handles 50
Grip control 68

H

Hazard warning lamps 64
headlamp adjustment 59
Headlamp adjustment 59
Headlamps, automatic dipping 58–59
Headlamps, automatic illumination 57–58
Headlamps, dipped beam 55, 145
Headlamps, halogen 145
Headlamps, main beam 55, 58, 145
Head restraints, front 36
Head restraints, rear 38–40
Head-up display 98–99
Heating 42, 44
Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC) 69–70
Hill Descent Control 69–70
Hill start assist 93
Hooks 52
Horn 65

I

Ignition 45, 88, 202
Ignition on 88
Ignition switch 86–87
Immobiliser, electronic 85
Indicator, AdBlue® range 15
Indicator, coolant temperature 14
Indicator, engine oil level 15
Indicators, direction 56
Inflating tyres 133, 158
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit) 138, 141
Infrared camera 97
Instrument panel 8, 8–9, 98
Instrument panel, matrix 8
Instrument panels 8
Internet browser 193, 196
ISOFIX mountings 78, 80, 82

J

Jack 138, 141, 199
Jump starting 148

K

Key 24–27
Key, electronic 25–26
Keyless Entry and Starting 25–26, 85, 87–88
Key not recognised 88–89
Key with remote control 24, 85–86
Kit, hands-free 165–166, 179, 201
Kit, puncture repair 138
Kit, temporary puncture repair 137–139, 141

L

Labels 5
Labels, identification 157

Lamp, boot 54, 147
Lamps, parking 56
Lamps, rear 146
Lams with Full LED technology 59
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 110–111
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 57, 145
Level, AdBlue® 131
Level, brake fluid 131
Level, Diesel additive 131–132
Level, engine coolant 14, 131
Level, engine oil 15, 130
Levels and checks 129–131
Level, screenwash fluid 61, 131
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 57, 145
Lighting, cornering 59–60
Lighting, exterior 55, 58
Lighting, guide-me home 57
Lighting, interior 53–54
Lighting, mood 54
Lighting, welcome 57–58
Loading 127–128
Load reduction mode 127
Locating your vehicle 25
Locking 24–25
Locking from the inside 30
Locking the doors 30–31
Low fuel level 121–122

M

Maintenance (advice) 135
Maintenance, routine 98, 132
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 97
Map reading lamps 53–54
Markings, identification 157
Mat 50, 98
Memorising a speed 99
Menu 178
Menu, main 160
Menus (audio) 173–174, 185–186
Messages 203
Messages, quick 203
Mirror, rear view 42
Mirrors, door 41–42, 111
Misfuel prevention 122
Mountings, ISOFIX 78, 80, 82
MP3 CD 164

N

Navigation 190–192
Navigation, connected 193–195
Net, storage 50

O

Obstacle detection 112
Oil change 130
Oil consumption 130
Oil, engine 130
On-board tools 53, 137–138
Opening the bonnet 128
Opening the boot 24, 26, 30
Opening the doors 24, 26, 29

P

Pads, brake 133
Paint 136, 157
Paint colour code 157
Parcel shelf, rear 52
Park Assist 116
Parking brake 89, 133
Parking sensors, audible and visual 112
Parking sensors, front 113
Parking sensors, rear 112
Plates, identification 157
Player, Apple® 165, 177, 200
Player, MP3 CD 164
Player, USB 163, 176, 199
Port, USB 49, 163, 176, 178, 195, 199
Pressures, tyres 133, 139, 141, 158
Pre-tensioning seat belts 72
Priming pump 137
Priming the fuel system 137
Profiles 181, 204
Protecting children 74–80
Puncture 138–139, 141

R

Radio 161–162, 174–175, 198
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 162, 176, 199
Range, AdBlue® 15, 131
RDS 175, 198
Reading lamps 53
Rear screen, demisting 47
Recharging the battery 148–149
Recirculation, air 44–45
Recorder, total distance 17
Recovery 150
Recovery of the vehicle 150
Reduction of electrical load 127
Regeneration of the particle filter 132
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 96
Reinitialising the remote control 29
Reminder, key in ignition 87
Reminder, lighting on 56
Remote control 24–27
Removing a wheel 141–143
Removing the mat 50
Replacing bulbs 144–146
Replacing fuses 147
Replacing the air filter 132
Replacing the oil filter 132
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 132
Reservoir, screenwash 131
Resetting the trip recorder 17
Reversing camera 97, 113–114, 116
Roof bars 127–128
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 137

S

Safety, children 74–80
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 132
Screen, instrument panel 21
Screen menu map 178
Screen, monochrome 18–19
Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 160
Screenwash 61
Screenwash, front 60
Screenwash, rear 61
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 16, 133
Seat angle 37
Seat belts 70–72, 78
Seat belts, rear 71
Seats, front 36–37
Seats, heated 38
Seats, rear 38–40, 76
Sensors (warnings) 97
Serial number, vehicle 157
Service indicator 14
Servicing 14, 132
Settings, equipment 17–20
Settings, system 181, 204
Sidelamps 55–57, 145–146
Smartphone 48
Snow chains 96, 123
Socket, 12 V accessory 48
Socket, auxiliary 164, 177, 199
Socket, Jack 164, 199
Speed limiter 99, 101–104
Speed limit recognition 100–101
Speedometer 98
Stability control (ESC) 67–68
Starting a Diesel engine 121
Starting the engine 86
Starting the vehicle 86–87
Starting using another battery 88, 148
Station, radio 161, 174–175, 198
Stay, bonnet 128–129
Steering mounted controls, audio 160, 172, 185
Steering wheel, adjustment 41
Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive 136
Stopping the vehicle 86–88
Stop & Start 22, 43, 46, 93–95, 121, 128, 132, 150
Storage 48, 51
Storage box 53
Storage wells 53
Stowing rings 50
Sunroof, panoramic 32–34
Sunshine sensor 43
Sun visor 48
Switching off the engine 86
Synchronising the remote control 29

T

Tank, fuel 121–122
Technical data 154, 156
Telephone 165–168, 179–180, 201–203
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition 168
Temperature, coolant 14
Time (setting) 18–19, 23, 181, 205
TMC (Traffic info) 192
Tool box 53
Tools 137–138
Topping-up AdBlue® 134
Top Rear Vision 113
Top Tether (fixing) 78, 80, 82
Total distance recorder 17
Touch screen 19–20, 61
Touch screen tablet 19–20
Towball, quickly detachable 123–126
Towbar 126
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 123–126
Towed loads 153–154, 156
Towing another vehicle 150, 152
Traction control (ASR) 67–68
Traffic information (TA) 161
Traffic information (TMC) 192
Trailer 126
Trajectory control systems 67
Trip computer 20–22
Trip distance recorder 17
Tyres 133, 158
Tyre under-inflation detection 95, 141

U

Under-inflation (detection) 95
Unlocking 24, 26
Unlocking from the inside 30
Unlocking the doors 30–31
Updating the date 182, 204
Updating the time 181, 205
USB 163, 176, 178, 195, 199

V

Vehicle data recording and privacy 209
Ventilation 42–44
Video 200
Voice commands 187–190

W

Warning and indicator lamps 9
Warning lamp, driver"s seat belt not fastened 72
Warning lamps 9
Warning lamp, seat belts 72
Warnings and indicators 9–10
Washing 98
Washing (advice) 135–136
Weights 153–154, 156
Wheel, spare 133, 137–138, 141, 144
Window controls 34–35
Windscreen, heated 46–47
Windscreen wipers 60, 62
Wiper blades (changing) 61–62
Wiper, rear 61
Wipers 60, 62–63
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 62–63

Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproducing and translating this document, even partially, is strictly prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

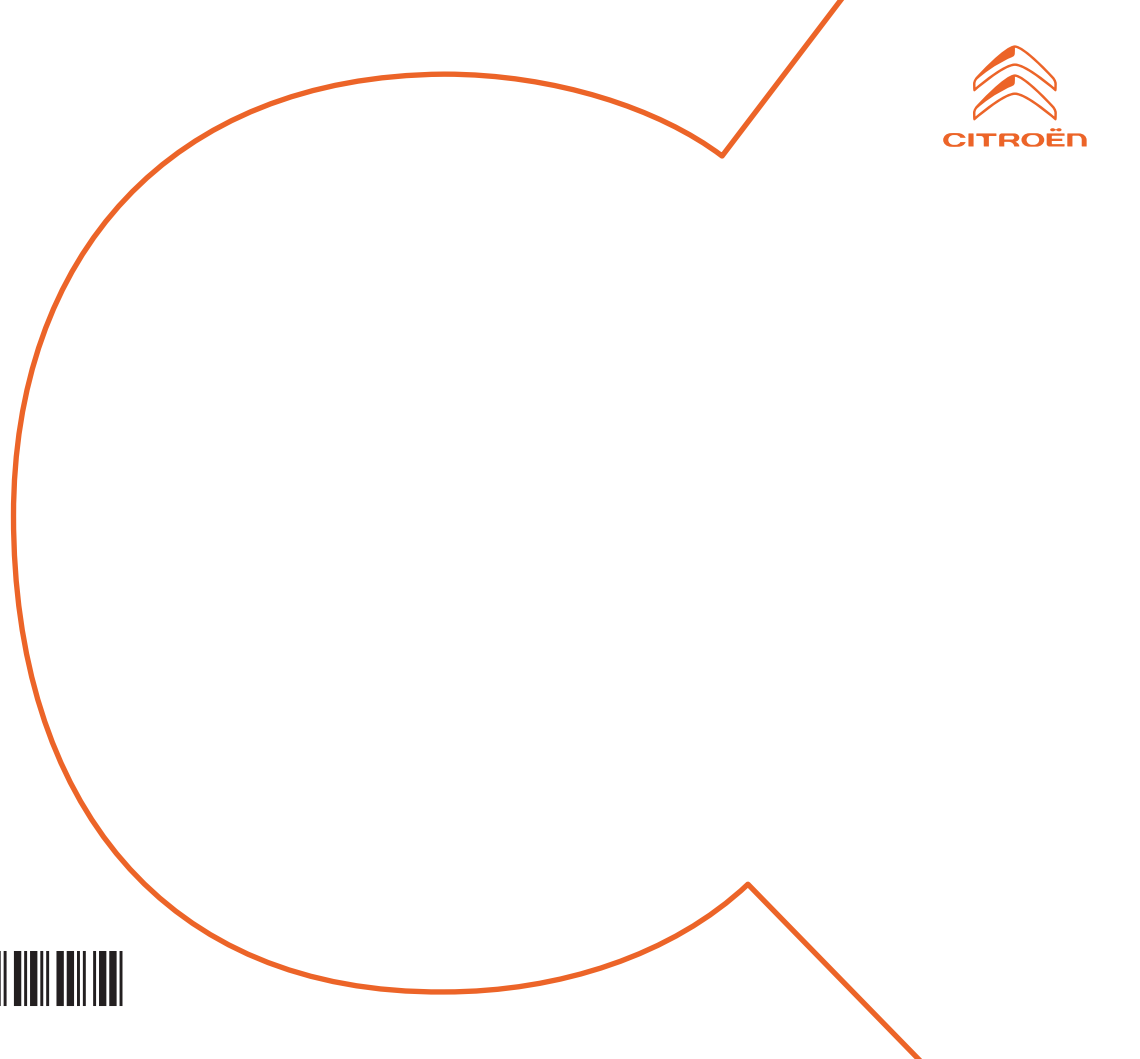
4DCONCEPT
Groupe MAURY Imprimeur

PEFC 10-31-1282

IMPRIM'VERT®

Printed in the EU
04-21

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 2-10, boulevard de l'Europe - 78300 POISSY
www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. VERSAILLES : 642 050 199



ANG. 21A88.0040